



ESSENTIAL C# 12.0

“Welcome to one of the most venerable and trusted franchises you could dream of in the world of C# books—and probably far beyond!”

—From the Foreword by **Mads Torgersen**,
Principal Architect, Microsoft

MARK MICHAELIS

with

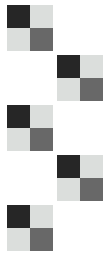
KEVIN BOST, *Technical Editor*

IntelliTect



FREE SAMPLE CHAPTER |





Essential C# 12.0

Mark Michaelis
with Kevin Bost,
Technical Editor

 Addison-Wesley

Hoboken, New Jersey

Cover image: [Iam_Anuphone/Shutterstock](#)

Microsoft, Windows, Visual Basic, Visual C#, and Visual C++ are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and/or other countries/regions.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and the publisher was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed with initial capital letters or in all capitals.

The author and publisher have taken care in the preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs contained herein.

For information about buying this title in bulk quantities, or for special sales opportunities (which may include electronic versions; custom cover designs; and content particular to your business, training goals, marketing focus, or branding interests), please contact our corporate sales department at corpsales@pearsoned.com or (800) 382-3419.

For government sales inquiries, please contact governmentsales@pearsoned.com.

For questions about sales outside the U.S., please contact intlcs@pearson.com.

Visit us on the Web: informit.com/aw

Library of Congress Control Number: 2023941980

Copyright © 2024 Pearson Education, Inc.

All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission must be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. For information regarding permissions, request forms and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions Department, please visit www.pearson.com/permissions/.

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-821951-2

ISBN-10: 0-13-821951-6

\$PrintCode

To my family: Elisabeth, Benjamin, Hanna, and Abigail. You have sacrificed a husband and daddy for countless hours of writing, frequently at times when he was needed most.

Thanks!

Also, to my friends and colleagues at IntelliTect. Thanks for filling in for me when I was writing rather than doing my job and for helping with the myriad of details to improve the content and keep a code base like this running smoothly. Thanks especially for making the EssentialCSharp.com website a reality.

Pearson's Commitment to Diversity, Equity, and Inclusion

Pearson is dedicated to creating bias-free content that reflects the diversity of all learners. We embrace the many dimensions of diversity, including but not limited to race, ethnicity, gender, socioeconomic status, ability, age, sexual orientation, and religious or political beliefs.

Education is a powerful force for equity and change in our world. It has the potential to deliver opportunities that improve lives and enable economic mobility. As we work with authors to create content for every product and service, we acknowledge our responsibility to demonstrate inclusivity and incorporate diverse scholarship so that everyone can achieve their potential through learning. As the world's leading learning company, we have a duty to help drive change and live up to our purpose to help more people create a better life for themselves and to create a better world.

Our ambition is to purposefully contribute to a world where:

- Everyone has an equitable and lifelong opportunity to succeed through learning.
- Our educational products and services are inclusive and represent the rich diversity of learners.
- Our educational content accurately reflects the histories and experiences of the learners we serve.
- Our educational content prompts deeper discussions with learners and motivates them to expand their own learning (and worldview).

While we work hard to present unbiased content, we want to hear from you about any concerns or needs with this Pearson product so that we can investigate and address them.

- Please contact us with concerns about any potential bias at <https://www.pearson.com/report-bias.html>.

Contents at a Glance

Contents vii

Foreword xv

Preface xvii

Acknowledgments xxxi

About the Author xxxiii

- 1 Introducing C# 1**
- 2 Data Types 49**
- 3 More with Data Types 93**
- 4 Operators and Control Flow 137**
- 5 Parameters and Methods 217**
- 6 Classes 293**
- 7 Inheritance 385**
- 8 Interfaces 443**
- 9 Introducing Structs and Records 487**
- 10 Well-Formed Types 547**
- 11 Exception Handling 601**
- 12 Generics 623**
- 13 Delegates and Lambda Expressions 683**
- 14 Events 727**
- 15 Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators 755**
- 16 LINQ with Query Expressions 809**
- 17 Building Custom Collections 833**

18	Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming	881
19	Introducing Multithreading	933
20	Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern	975
21	Iterating in Parallel	1021
22	Thread Synchronization	1041
23	Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code	1077
24	The Common Language Infrastructure	1107
	<i>Index</i>	<i>1131</i>
	<i>Index of 8.0 Topics</i>	<i>1187</i>
	<i>Index of 9.0 Topics</i>	<i>1190</i>
	<i>Index of 10.0 Topics</i>	<i>1191</i>
	<i>Index of 11.0 Topics</i>	<i>1192</i>
	<i>Index of 12.0 Topics</i>	<i>1193</i>

Contents

Foreword xv

Preface xvii

Acknowledgments xxxi

About the Author xxxiii

1 Introducing C# 1

Hello, World 2

C# Syntax Fundamentals 12

Working with Variables 24

Console Input and Output 28

Managed Execution and the Common Language Infrastructure 38

Multiple .NET Frameworks 44

Summary 48

2 Data Types 49

Type Name Forms 50

Fundamental Numeric Types 52

More Fundamental Types 63

Conversions between Data Types 84

Summary 92

3 More with Data Types 93

Categories of Types 93

Declaring Types That Allow `null` 96

Implicitly Typed Local Variables 102

Tuples 103

Arrays 112

	Summary	134
4	Operators and Control Flow	137
	Operators	137
	Introducing Flow Control	156
	Code Blocks ({})	161
	Code Blocks, Scopes, and Declaration Spaces	164
	Boolean Expressions	166
	Programming with <code>null</code>	173
	Bitwise Operators (<code><<</code> , <code>>></code> , <code> </code> , <code>&</code> , <code>^</code> , <code>~</code>)	181
	Control Flow Statements, Continued	187
	Jump Statements	200
	C# Preprocessor Directives	206
	Summary	215
5	Parameters and Methods	217
	Calling a Method	218
	Declaring a Method	225
	Local Functions	232
	Using Directives	233
	Returns and Parameters on Main Method	242
	Top-Level Statements	246
	Advanced Method Parameters	247
	Recursion	261
	Method Overloading	264
	Optional Parameters	267
	Basic Error Handling with Exceptions	272
	Summary	291
6	Classes	293
	Declaring and Instantiating a Class	298
	Instance Fields	302
	Instance Methods	305
	Using the <code>this</code> Keyword	306
	Access Modifiers	314
	Properties	316

	Constructors	333
	Non-Nullable Reference Type Properties with Constructors	346
	Nullable Attributes	354
	Deconstructors	357
	Static Members	359
	Extension Methods	370
	Encapsulating the Data	372
	Nested Classes	376
	Partial Classes	379
	Summary	384
7	Inheritance	385
	Derivation	386
	Overriding the Base Class	397
	Abstract Classes	410
	All Classes Derive from <code>System.Object</code>	417
	Type Checking	419
	Pattern Matching	423
	Avoid Pattern Matching When Polymorphism Is Possible	438
	Summary	440
8	Interfaces	443
	Introducing Interfaces	444
	Polymorphism through Interfaces	446
	Interface Implementation	451
	Converting between the Implementing Class and Its Interfaces	457
	Interface Inheritance	458
	Multiple Interface Inheritance	461
	Extension Methods on Interfaces	461
	Versioning	464
	Extension Methods versus Default Interface Members	480
	Interfaces Compared with Abstract Classes	482
	Interfaces Compared with Attributes	484
	Summary	484
9	Introducing Structs and Records	487

Reference Equality versus Value Equality 493

Structs 494

Record Classes 500

Record Class Inheritance 503

Records 504

Overriding object Members 513

Customizing Record Behavior 521

Boxing 523

Enums 532

Summary 544

10 Well-Formed Types 547

Operator Overloading 548

Referencing Other Assemblies 557

Encapsulation of Types 564

Defining Namespaces 567

XML Comments 571

Garbage Collection and Weak References 576

Resource Cleanup 580

Lazy Initialization 596

Summary 598

11 Exception Handling 601

Multiple Exception Types 601

Catching Exceptions 604

Rethrowing an Existing Exception 607

General Catch Block 609

Guidelines for Exception Handling 610

Defining Custom Exceptions 614

Rethrowing a Wrapped Exception 618

Summary 622

12 Generics 623

C# without Generics 624

Introducing Generic Types 630

Constraints 646

- Generic Methods 663
- Covariance and Contravariance 669
- Generic Internals 676
- Summary 681
- 13 Delegates and Lambda Expressions 683**
 - Introducing Delegates 684
 - Declaring Delegate Types 688
 - Lambda Expressions 698
 - Statement Lambdas 699
 - Expression Lambdas 702
 - Anonymous Methods 705
 - Delegates Do Not Have Structural Equality 707
 - Outer Variables 710
 - Static Anonymous Functions 712
 - Expression Trees 716
 - Summary 724
- 14 Events 727**
 - Coding the Publish–Subscribe Pattern with Multicast Delegates 728
 - Understanding Events 743
 - Summary 753
- 15 Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators 755**
 - Collection Initializers 756
 - What Makes a Class a Collection: `IEnumerable` 759
 - Standard Query Operators 766
 - Anonymous Types with LINQ 796
 - Summary 806
- 16 LINQ with Query Expressions 809**
 - Introducing Query Expressions 810
 - Query Expressions Are Just Method Invocations 829
 - Summary 831
- 17 Building Custom Collections 833**
 - More Collection Interfaces 834
 - Primary Collection Classes 837

Providing an Indexer 859
Returning null or an Empty Collection 862
Iterators 863
Summary 879

18 Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming 881

Reflection 881
nameof Operator 894
Attributes 895
Programming with Dynamic Objects 920
Summary 931

19 Introducing Multithreading 933

Multithreading Basics 935
Asynchronous Tasks 943
Canceling a Task 965
Working with System.Threading 972
Summary 973

20 Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern 975

Synchronously Invoking a High-Latency Operation 975
Asynchronously Invoking a High-Latency Operation Using the TPL 979
The Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern with async and await 984
Introducing Asynchronous Return of ValueTask<T> 991
Asynchronous Streams 994
IAsyncDisposable and the await using Declaration and Statement 998
Using LINQ with IAsyncEnumerable 999
Returning void from an Asynchronous Method 1001
Asynchronous Lambdas and Local Functions 1006
Task Schedulers and the Synchronization Context 1013
async/await with the Windows UI 1015
Summary 1019

21 Iterating in Parallel 1021

Executing Loop Iterations in Parallel 1021
Running LINQ Queries in Parallel 1032

Summary	1039
22 Thread Synchronization	1041
Why Synchronization?	1042
Timers	1073
Summary	1076
23 Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code	1077
Platform Invoke	1078
Pointers and Addresses	1093
Executing Unsafe Code via a Delegate	1104
Summary	1105
24 The Common Language Infrastructure	1107
Defining the Common Language Infrastructure	1107
CLI Implementations	1109
.NET Standard	1113
Base Class Library	1113
C# Compilation to Machine Code	1114
Runtime	1116
Assemblies, Manifests, and Modules	1121
Common Intermediate Language	1124
Common Type System	1125
Common Language Specification	1125
Metadata	1126
.NET Native and Ahead of Time Compilation	1127
Summary	1128
<i>Index</i>	<i>1131</i>
<i>Index of 8.0 Topics</i>	<i>1187</i>
<i>Index of 9.0 Topics</i>	<i>1190</i>
<i>Index of 10.0 Topics</i>	<i>1191</i>
<i>Index of 11.0 Topics</i>	<i>1192</i>
<i>Index of 12.0 Topics</i>	<i>1193</i>

This page intentionally left blank

Foreword

Welcome to one of the most venerable and trusted franchises you could dream of in the world of C# books—and probably far beyond! Mark Michaelis’s *Essential C#* book has been a classic for years, but it was yet to see the light of day when I first got to know Mark.

In 2005, when LINQ (Language Integrated Query) was disclosed, I had only just joined Microsoft, and I got to tag along to the PDC conference for the big reveal. Despite my almost total lack of contribution to the technology, I thoroughly enjoyed the hype. The talks were overflowing, the printed leaflets were flying off the tables like hotcakes: It was a big day for C# and .NET, and I was having a great time.

It was pretty quiet in the hands-on labs area, though, where people could try out the technology preview themselves with nice scripted walkthroughs. That’s where I ran into Mark. Needless to say, he wasn’t following the script. He was doing his own experiments, combing through the docs, talking to other folks, busily pulling together his own picture.

As a newcomer to the C# community, I may have met a lot of people for the first time at that conference—people with whom I have since formed great relationships. But to be honest, I don’t remember them—it’s all a blur. The only one I remember is Mark. Here is why: When I asked him if he was liking the new stuff, he didn’t just join the rave. He was totally level-headed: *“I don’t know yet. I haven’t made up my mind about it.”* He wanted to absorb and understand the full package, and until then he wasn’t going to let anyone tell him what to think.

So instead of the quick sugar rush of affirmation I might have expected, I got to have a frank and wholesome conversation, the first of many over the years, about details, consequences, and concerns with this new technology. And so it remains: Mark is an incredibly valuable community member for us language designers to have, because he is super smart, insists on understanding everything to the core, and has phenomenal insight into how things affect real developers. But perhaps most of all, he is forthright and never afraid to speak his mind. If something passes the Mark Test, then we know we can start feeling pretty good about it!

These are the same qualities that make Mark such a great writer. He goes right to the essence and communicates with great integrity, no sugarcoating, and a keen eye for practical value and real-world problems. Mark has a great gift of providing clarity and elucidation, and no one will help you get C# 12.0 like he does.

Enjoy!

—*Mads Torgersen*

Principal Architect, Microsoft

Preface

Throughout the history of software engineering, the methodology used to write computer programs has undergone several paradigm shifts, each building on the foundation of the former by increasing code organization and decreasing complexity. This book takes you through these same paradigm shifts.

The beginning chapters take you through sequential programming structure, in which statements are executed in the order in which they are written. The problem with this model is that complexity increases exponentially as the requirements increase. To reduce this complexity, code blocks are moved into methods, creating a structured programming model. This allows you to call the same code block from multiple locations within a program, without duplicating code. Even with this construct, however, programs quickly become unwieldy and require further abstraction. Object-oriented programming, introduced in Chapter 6, was the response. In subsequent chapters, you will learn about additional methodologies, such as interface-based programming, LINQ (and the transformation it makes to the collection API), and eventually rudimentary forms of declarative programming (in Chapter 18) via attributes.

This book has three main functions.

- It provides comprehensive coverage of the C# language, going beyond a tutorial and offering a foundation upon which you can begin effective software development projects.
- For readers already familiar with C#, this book provides insight into some of the more complex programming paradigms and provides in-depth coverage of the features introduced in the latest version of the language, C# 12.0 and .NET 8.
- It serves as a timeless reference even after you gain proficiency with the language.

The key to successfully learning C# is to start coding as soon as possible. Don't wait until you are an "expert" in theory; start writing software immediately. As a believer in iterative development, I hope this book enables even a novice programmer to begin writing basic C# code by the end of Chapter 2.

Many topics are not covered in this book. You won't find coverage of topics such as ASP.NET, Entity Framework, Maui, smart client development, distributed programming, and so on. Although these topics are relevant to .NET, to do them justice requires books of their own. Fortunately, *Essential C# 12.0* focuses on C# and the types within the Base Class Library. Reading this book will prepare you to focus on and develop expertise in any of the more advanced areas, given a strong foundation in the C# language.

Target Audience for This Book

My challenge with this book was to keep advanced developers awake while not abandoning beginners by using words such as *assembly*, *link*, *chain*, *thread*, and *fusion*, as though the topic was more appropriate for blacksmiths than for programmers. This book's primary audience is experienced developers looking to add another language to their quiver. However, I have carefully assembled this book to provide significant value to developers at all levels.

- *Beginners*: If you are new to programming, this book serves as a resource to help transition you from an entry-level programmer to a C# developer who is comfortable with any C# programming task that's thrown your way. This book not only teaches you syntax but also trains you in good programming practices that will serve you throughout your programming career.
- *Structured programmers*: Just as it's best to learn a foreign language through immersion, learning a computer language is most effective when you begin using it before you know all the intricacies. In this vein, the book begins with a tutorial that will be comfortable for those familiar with structured programming, and by the end of Chapter 5, developers in this category should feel at home writing basic control flow programs. However, the key to excellence for C# developers is not memorizing syntax. To transition from simple programs to enterprise development, the C# developer must think natively in terms of objects and their relationships. To this end, Chapter 6's

Beginner Topics introduce classes and object-oriented development. The role of historically structured programming languages such as C, COBOL, and FORTRAN is still significant but shrinking, so it behooves software engineers to become familiar with object-oriented development. C# is an ideal language for making this transition because it was designed with object-oriented development as one of its core tenets.

- *Object-based and object-oriented developers:* C++, Java, Python, TypeScript, and Visual Basic programmers fall into this category. Many of you are already completely comfortable with semicolons and curly braces. A brief glance at the code in Chapter 1 reveals that, at its core, C# is like other C- and C++-style languages that you already know.
- *C# professionals:* For those already versed in C#, this book provides a convenient reference for less frequently encountered syntax. Furthermore, it provides insight into language details and subtleties that are seldom addressed. Most important, it presents the guidelines and patterns for programming robust and maintainable code. This book also aids in the task of teaching C# to others. With the emergence of C# 3.0 through 12.0, some of the most prominent enhancements are
 1. String interpolation (see Chapter 2)
 2. Implicitly typed variables (see Chapter 3)
 3. Tuples (see Chapter 3)
 4. Nullable reference types (see Chapter 3)
 5. Pattern matching (see Chapter 4)
 6. Extension methods (see Chapter 6)
 7. Partial methods (see Chapter 6)
 8. Default interface members (see Chapter 8)
 9. Anonymous types (see Chapter 12)
 10. Generics (see Chapter 12)

11. Lambda statements and expressions (see Chapter 13)
12. Expression trees (see Chapter 13)
13. Standard query operators (see Chapter 15)
14. Query expressions (see Chapter 16)
15. Dynamic programming (Chapter 18)
16. Multithreaded programming with the Task Programming Library and `async` (Chapter 20)
17. Parallel query processing with PLINQ (Chapter 21)
18. Concurrent collections (Chapter 22)

These topics are covered in detail for those not already familiar with them. Also pertinent to advanced C# development is the subject of pointers, covered in Chapter 23. Even experienced C# developers often do not understand this topic well.

Features of This Book

Essential C# 12.0 is a language book that adheres to the core C# Language Specification. To help you understand the various C# constructs, it provides numerous examples demonstrating each feature. Accompanying each concept are guidelines and best practices, ensuring that code compiles, avoids likely pitfalls, and achieves maximum maintainability.

To improve readability, code is specially formatted and chapters are outlined using mind maps.

Website

The interactive website for the book, available at <https://essentialcsharp.com>, provides the online chapters, which allows full text search. Shortly after this writing, I expect the website to provide interactive code editing and client-side compilation of

many of the code listings. This will allow you to focus on the language rather than getting distracted by installations or dotnet setup issues.

Source Code Download

In addition to the EssentialCSharp.com website, all the source code is available on GitHub at <https://github.com/IntelliTect/EssentialCSharp> so it can be downloaded or cloned locally to your computer. This enables you to work through the code samples as is or modify them and see the effects. This is a great way to learn the intricacies of the language.

C# Coding Guidelines

One of the more significant enhancements included in *Essential C# 12.0* is the C# coding guidelines, as shown in the following example taken from Chapter 17:

Guidelines

DO ensure that equal objects have equal hash codes.

DO ensure that the hash code of an object never changes while it is in a hash table.

DO ensure that the hashing algorithm quickly produces a well-distributed hash.

DO ensure that the hashing algorithm is robust in any possible object state.

These guidelines are the key to differentiating a programmer who knows the syntax from an expert who can discern the most effective code to write based on the circumstances. Such an expert not only gets the code to compile but does so while following best practices that minimize bugs and enable maintenance well into the future. The coding guidelines highlight some of the key principles that readers will want to be sure to incorporate into their development. Visit <https://intellitect.com/Guidelines> for a current list of all the guidelines.

Code Samples

The code snippets in most of this text can run on most implementations of the Common Language Infrastructure (CLI), but the focus is on the .NET implementation. Platform- or vendor-specific libraries are seldom used except when communicating important concepts relevant only to those platforms (e.g., appropriately handling the single-threaded user interface of Windows). Any code that specifically relates to C# 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 11.0, or 12.0 is called out in the C# version indexes at the end of the book.

Here is a sample code listing.

LISTING 1.21: Commenting Your Code

```
public class CommentSamples
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string firstName; // Variable for storing the first name
        string lastName; // Variable for storing the last name

        Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

        Console.Write /* No new line */ ("Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = Console.ReadLine();

        Console.Write /* No new line */ ("Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = Console.ReadLine();

        /* Display a greeting to the console
           using composite formatting. */

        Console.WriteLine("Your full name is {1}, {0}.",
            firstName, lastName);
        // This is the end
        // of the program listing
    }
}
```

The formatting is as follows:

- Comments are shown in italics.

```
/* Display a greeting to the console */
```

```
Console.Write /* No new line */ ("Enter your first name: ");
```

- Keywords are shown in bold.

```
static void Main() { }
```

- Highlighted code calls out specific code snippets that may have changed from an earlier listing, or demonstrates the concept described in the text.

LISTING 2.23: Error; string Is Immutable

```
Console.Write("Enter text: ");
string text = Console.ReadLine();

// UNEXPECTED: Does not convert text to uppercase
text.ToUpper();

Console.WriteLine(text);
```

- Incomplete listings contain an ellipsis to denote irrelevant code that has been omitted.

```
// ...
```

OUTPUT 1.7

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your last name: Montoya

Your full name is Inigo Montoya.
```

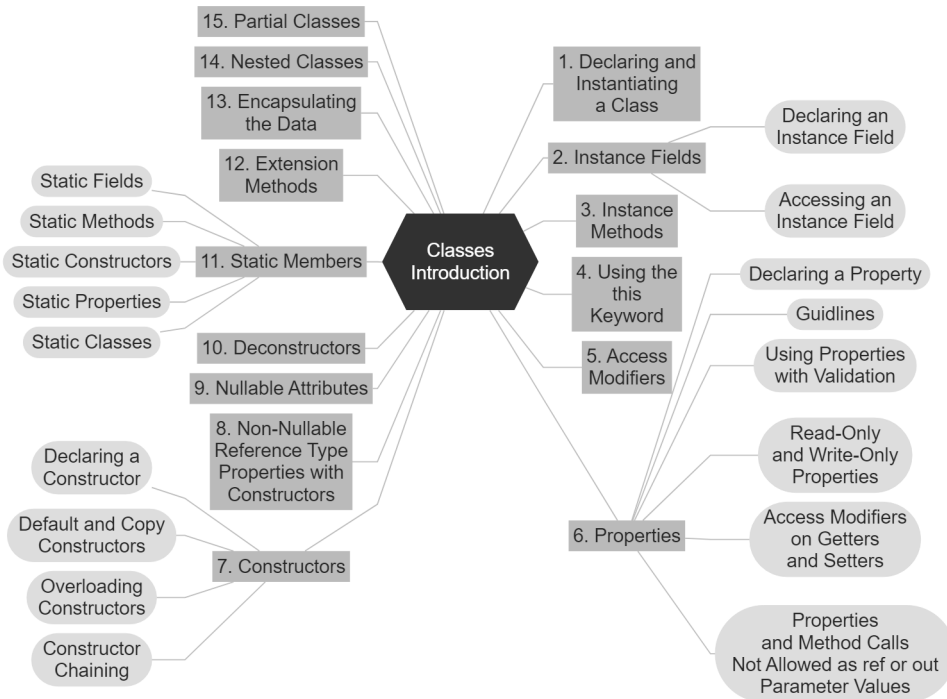
- Console output is the output from a particular listing that appears following the listing. User input for the program appears in boldface.

Although it might have been convenient to provide full code samples that you could copy into your own programs, doing so would detract from your learning a particular topic. Therefore, you need to modify the code samples before you can incorporate them into your programs. The core omission is error checking, such as

exception handling. Also, code samples do not explicitly include using System statements. You need to assume the statement throughout all samples.

Mind Maps

Each chapter's introduction includes a **mind map**, which serves as an outline that provides an at-a-glance reference to each chapter's content. Here is an example (taken from Chapter 6).



The theme of each chapter appears in the mind map's center. High-level topics spread out from the core. Mind maps allow you to absorb the flow from high-level to more detailed concepts easily, with less chance of encountering very specific knowledge that you might not be looking for.

Helpful Notes

Depending on your level of experience, special features will help you navigate through the text.

- Beginner Topics provide definitions or explanations targeted specifically toward entry-level programmers.
- Advanced Topics enable experienced developers to focus on the material that is most relevant to them.
- Callout notes highlight key principles in boxes so that readers easily recognize their significance.
- Language Contrast sidebars identify key differences between C# and its predecessors to aid those familiar with other languages.

How This Book Is Organized

At a high level, software engineering is about managing complexity, and it is toward this end that I have organized *Essential C# 12.0*. Chapters 1–5 introduce structured programming, which enable you to start writing simple functioning code immediately. Chapters 6–10 present the object-oriented constructs of C#. Novice readers should focus on fully understanding this section before they proceed to the more advanced topics found in the remainder of this book. Chapters 12–14 introduce additional complexity-reducing constructs, handling common patterns needed by virtually all modern programs. This leads to dynamic programming with reflection and attributes, which is used extensively for threading and interoperability in the chapters that follow.

The book ends with Chapter 24 on the Common Language Infrastructure, which describes C# within the context of the development platform in which it operates. This chapter appears at the end because it is not C# specific and it departs from the syntax and programming style in the rest of the book. However, this chapter is suitable for reading at any time, perhaps most appropriately immediately following Chapter 1.

Here is a description of each chapter (in this list, chapter numbers shown in **bold** indicate the presence of C# 10.0–12.0 material).

- **Chapter 1, *Introducing C#***: After presenting the C# “Hello World” program, this chapter proceeds to dissect it. This should familiarize readers with the look and feel of a C# program and provide details on how to compile and debug

their own programs. It also touches on the context of a C# program's execution and its intermediate language.

- *Chapter 2, Data Types:* Functioning programs manipulate data, and this chapter introduces the primitive data types of C#.
- *Chapter 3, More with Data Types:* This chapter includes coverage of two type categories: value types and reference types. From there, it delves into implicitly typed local variables, tuples, the nullable modifier, and the C# 8.0-introduced feature, nullable reference types. It concludes with an in-depth look at a primitive array structure.
- *Chapter 4, Operators and Control Flow:* To take advantage of the iterative capabilities in a computer, you need to know how to include loops and conditional logic within your program. This chapter also covers the C# operators, data conversion, and preprocessor directives.
- *Chapter 5, Methods and Parameters:* This chapter investigates the details of methods and their parameters. It includes passing by value, passing by reference, and returning data via an out parameter. In C# 4.0, default parameter support was added, and this chapter explains how to use default parameters.
- *Chapter 6, Classes:* Given the basic building blocks of a class, this chapter combines these constructs to form fully functional types. Classes form the core of object-oriented technology by defining the template for an object.
- *Chapter 7, Inheritance:* Although inheritance is a programming fundamental to many developers, C# provides some unique constructs, such as the new modifier. This chapter discusses the details of the inheritance syntax, including overriding.
- *Chapter 8, Interfaces:* This chapter demonstrates how interfaces are used to define the versionable interaction contract between classes. C# includes both explicit and implicit interface member implementation, enabling an additional encapsulation level not supported by most other languages. With the introduction of default interface members, there is a section on interface versioning in C# 8.0.
- *Chapter 9, Introducing Structs and Records:* C# 9.0 introduced the concepts of records for structs and expanded it to reference types in C# 10. Although not as prevalent as defining reference types, it is sometimes necessary to define value types that behave in a fashion similar to the primitive types built into C#. In defining how to create custom structures, this chapter also describes the idiosyncrasies they may introduce.

- *Chapter 10, Well-Formed Types:* This chapter discusses more advanced type definition. It explains how to implement operators, such as + and casts, and describes how to encapsulate multiple classes into a single library. In addition, the chapter demonstrates defining namespaces and XML comments and discusses how to design classes for garbage collection.
- *Chapter 11, Exception Handling:* This chapter expands on the exception-handling introduction from Chapter 5 and describes how exceptions follow a hierarchy that enables creating custom exceptions. It also includes some best practices on exception handling.
- *Chapter 12, Generics:* Generics are perhaps the core feature missing from C# 1.0. This chapter fully covers this 2.0 feature. In addition, C# 4.0 added support for covariance and contravariance—something covered in the context of generics in this chapter.
- **Chapter 13, Delegates and Lambda Expressions:** Delegates begin clearly distinguishing C# from its predecessors by defining patterns for handling events within code. This virtually eliminates the need for writing routines that poll. Lambda expressions are the key concept that make C# 3.0's LINQ possible. This chapter explains how lambda expressions build on the delegate construct by providing a more elegant and succinct syntax. This chapter forms the foundation for the collection API discussed next.
- *Chapter 14, Events:* Encapsulated delegates, known as events, are a core construct of the Common Language Runtime. Anonymous methods, another C# 2.0 feature, are also presented here.
- *Chapter 15, Collection Interfaces with Standard Query Operators:* The simple and yet elegantly powerful changes introduced in C# 3.0 begin to shine in this chapter as we take a look at the extension methods of the Enumerable class. This class makes available a collection API known as the standard query operators, which is discussed in detail here.
- *Chapter 16, LINQ with Query Expressions:* Using standard query operators alone results in some long statements that are hard to decipher. However, query expressions provide an alternative syntax that matches closely with SQL, as described in this chapter.
- *Chapter 17, Building Custom Collections:* In building custom APIs that work against business objects, it is sometimes necessary to create custom collections. This chapter details how to do this and in the process introduces contextual keywords that make custom collection building easier.

- **Chapter 18, Reflection, Attributes, and Dynamic Programming:** Object-oriented programming formed the basis for a paradigm shift in program structure in the late 1980s. In a similar way, attributes facilitate declarative programming and embedded metadata, ushering in a new paradigm. This chapter looks at attributes and discusses how to retrieve them via reflection. It also covers file input and output via the serialization framework within the Base Class Library. In C# 4.0, a new keyword, *dynamic*, was added to the language. This removed all type checking until runtime, a significant expansion of what can be done with C#.
- **Chapter 19, Introducing Multithreading:** Most modern programs require the use of threads to execute long-running tasks while ensuring active response to simultaneous events. As programs become more sophisticated, they must take additional precautions to protect data in these advanced environments. Programming multithreaded applications is complex. This chapter introduces how to work with tasks, including canceling them, and how to handle exceptions executing in the task context.
- **Chapter 20, Programming the Task-Based Asynchronous Pattern:** This chapter delves into the task-based asynchronous pattern with its accompanying `async/await` syntax. It provides a significantly simplified approach to multithreaded programming. In addition, the C# 8.0 concept of asynchronous streams is included.
- **Chapter 21, Iterating in Parallel:** One easy way to introduce performance improvements is by iterating through data in parallel using a `Parallel` object or with the `Parallel LINQ` library.
- **Chapter 22, Thread Synchronization:** Building on the preceding chapter, this chapter demonstrates some of the built-in threading pattern support that can simplify the explicit control of multithreaded code.
- **Chapter 23, Platform Interoperability and Unsafe Code:** Given that C# is a relatively young language, far more code is written in other languages than in C#. To take advantage of this preexisting code, C# supports interoperability—the calling of unmanaged code—through `P/Invoke`. In addition, C# provides for the use of pointers and direct memory manipulation. Although code with pointers requires special privileges to run, it provides the power to interoperate fully with traditional C-based application programming interfaces.
- **Chapter 24, The Common Language Infrastructure:** Fundamentally, C# is the syntax that was designed as the most effective programming language on top of the underlying Common Language Infrastructure. This chapter delves into how C# programs relate to the underlying runtime and its specifications.

- *Indexes of C# 8.0-12.0*: These indexes provide quick references for the features added in C# 8.0 through 12.0. They are specifically designed to help programmers quickly update their language skills to a more recent version.

I hope you find this book to be a great resource in establishing your C# expertise and that you continue to reference it for those areas that you use less frequently well after you are proficient in C#.

—Mark Michaelis

IntelliTect.com/mark, mark.michaelis.net

X (formerly Twitter): @Intellitect, @MarkMichaelis

Register your copy of *Essential C# 12.0* on the InformIT site for convenient access to updates and/or corrections as they become available. To start the registration process, go to informit.com/register and log in or create an account. Enter the product ISBN (9780138219512) and click Submit. Look on the Registered Products tab for an Access Bonus Content link next to this product, and follow that link to access any available bonus materials. If you would like to be notified of exclusive offers on new editions and updates, please check the box to receive email from us.

This page intentionally left blank

Acknowledgments

No book can be published by the author alone, and I am extremely grateful for the multitude of people who helped me with this one. The order in which I thank people is not significant, except for those who come first. Given that this is now the eighth edition of the book, you can only imagine how much my family has sacrificed to allow me to write over the last 18 years (not to mention the books before that). Benjamin, Hanna, and Abigail often had a Daddy distracted by this book, but Elisabeth suffered even more so. She was often left to take care of things, holding the family's world together on her own. (While on vacation in 2017, I spent days indoors writing while they would much have preferred to go to the beach.)

In writing *Essential C# 12.0*, I am very grateful that Pearson gave permission for IntelliTect to host the manuscript on the website, essentialcsharp.com. I could never have done this without the IntelliTect team, however. I am so grateful to be surrounded by such amazing software engineers who produce such excellence autonomously from me. Many, many hours were spent parsing the manuscript, formatting it, editing the content, and creating both the website output and the manuscript for print. Thanks so much to the following contributors that made this edition possible: Benjamin Michaelis, Kevin Bost, Daniel Olvera, Jenny Curry, Mikaella Croskrey, Grant Woods, Zack Ward, Josh Willis, Andrew Scott, Anré “Ray” Tanner, Artem Chetverikov, Casey White, Austen Frostad, Tom Clark, Joseph Riddles, John Evans, Kelsey McMahon, Casey Schadewitz, Cameron J. Osborn, Nicole Glidden, and Elizabeth Pauley. Special thanks to Kevin Bost and my son Benjamin Michaelis. In addition to their code contributions, they helped manage the entire web tooling project, making the website a reality.

I have worked with Kevin Bost at IntelliTect since 2013, and he continues to surprise me with his incredible aptitude for software development. Not only is the depth of his C# knowledge phenomenal, but he is a level-10 expert in so many additional development technologies. For all this and more, I asked Kevin Bost to review the book as an official technical editor this year, and I am truly grateful. He brought insights and improvements to content that has been in the book since the

early editions, which no one else thought to mention. This attention to detail, combined with his unswerving demand for excellence, truly establishes *Essential C# 12.0* as a quintessential C# book for those looking to focus on the language.

Of course, Eric Lippert is no less amazing as well. His grasp of C# is truly astounding, and I am very appreciative of his edits, especially when he pushed for perfection in terminology. His improvements to the C# 3.0 chapters were incredibly significant, and in the second edition my only regret was that I didn't have him review all the chapters. However, that regret has since been mitigated: Eric painstakingly reviewed every *Essential C# 4.0* chapter and even served as a contributing author for *Essential C# 5.0* and *Essential C# 6.0*. I am extremely grateful for his role as a technical editor in the editions leading up to *Essential C# 12.0*. Thanks, Eric! I can't imagine anyone better for the job. You deserve all the credit for raising the bar from good to great.

As is the case with Eric and C#, there are fewer than a handful of people who know .NET multithreading as well as Stephen Toub. Accordingly, Stephen concentrated on the two rewritten (for a third time) multithreading chapters and their new focus on async support in C# 5.0. Thanks, Stephen!

Over the years, many other technical editors have reviewed each chapter in minute detail to ensure technical accuracy. I was often amazed by the subtle errors these folks still managed to catch: Paul Bramsman, Kody Brown, Andrew Comb, Ian Davis, Doug Dechow, Gerard Frantz, Dan Haley, Thomas Heavey, Anson Horton, Brian Jones, Shane Kercheval, Angelika Langer, Neal Lundby, John Michaelis, Jason Morse, Nicholas Paldino, Jason Peterson, Jon Skeet, Michael Stokesbary, Robert Stokesbary, and John Timney.

Thanks to everyone at Pearson/Addison-Wesley for their patience in working with me in spite of my frequent focus on everything else except the manuscript. Thanks also to Malobika Chakraborty and Julie Nahil for helping me through the entire process from proposal to production.

About the Author

Mark Michaelis is the founder of IntelliTect, an innovative software architecture and development firm where he serves as the chief technical architect and trainer. Mark leads his successful company while flying around the world delivering conference sessions on leadership or technology and conducting speaking engagements on behalf of Microsoft or other clients. He has also written numerous articles and books, and is an adjunct professor at Eastern Washington University, founder of the Spokane .NET Users Group, and co-organizer of the annual TEDx Coeur d'Alene events.

A world-class C# expert, Mark has been a Microsoft Regional Director since 2007 and a Microsoft MVP for more than 25 years.

Mark holds a bachelor of arts in philosophy from the University of Illinois and a master's degree in computer science from the Illinois Institute of Technology.

When not bonding with his computer, Mark is busy showing his kids real life in other countries or playing racquetball (having suspended competing in Ironman competitions back in 2016). Mark lives in Spokane, Washington, with his wife, Elisabeth, and three children, Benjamin, Hanna, and Abigail.

About the Technical Editor

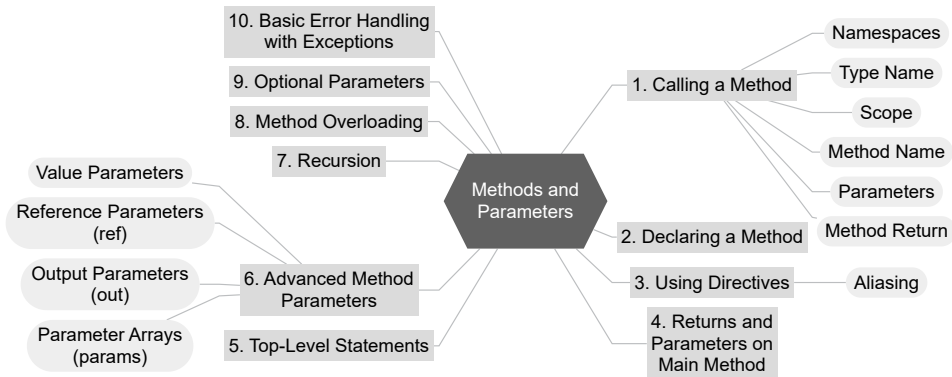
Kevin Bost is a successful Microsoft MVP and senior software architect at IntelliTect. He has been instrumental in building several innovative products, including System.CommandLine, Moq.AutoMocker, and ShowMeTheXAML. When not at work, Kevin can be found online, mentoring other developers on YouTube (youtube.keboo.dev) and maintaining the popular Material Design in XAML toolkit (<http://materialdesigninxaml.net/>). He also enjoys board games, Ultimate Frisbee, and riding his motorcycle.

This page intentionally left blank

5

Parameters and Methods

From what you have learned about C# programming so far, you should be able to write straightforward programs consisting of a list of statements, similar to the way programs were created in the 1970s. Programming has come a long way since the 1970s, however; as programs have become more complex, new paradigms have emerged to manage that complexity. Procedural or structured programming provides constructs by which statements are grouped together to form units. Furthermore, with structured programming, it is possible to pass data to a group of statements and then have data returned once the statements have executed.



Besides the basics of calling and defining methods, this chapter covers some slightly more advanced concepts—namely, recursion, method overloading, optional parameters, and named arguments. All method calls discussed so far and through the end of this chapter are static (a concept that Chapter 6 explores in detail).

Even as early as the `HelloWorld` program in Chapter 1, you learned how to define a method. In that example, you defined the `Main()` method. In this chapter, you will learn about method creation in more detail, including the special C# syntaxes (`ref` and `out`) for parameters that pass variables rather than values to methods. Lastly, we will touch on some rudimentary error handling.

Calling a Method

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

What Is a Method?

Up to this point, almost all of the statements in the programs you have written have appeared together in a list without any grouping outside of what the statement or code block provided. When programs become any more complex, this approach quickly becomes difficult to maintain and complicated to read through and understand.

A **method** is a means of grouping together sequence a of statements to perform a particular action or compute a particular result. This provides greater structure and organization for the statements that compose a program. Consider, for example, a `Main()` method that counts the lines of source code in a directory. Instead of having one large `Main()` method, you can provide a shorter version that allows you to hone in on the details of each method implementation as necessary. Listing 5.1 shows an example.

LISTING 5.1: Grouping Statements into Methods

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        int lineCount;
```

```
    string files;

    DisplayHelpText();
    files = GetFiles();
    lineCount = CountLines(files);
    DisplayLineCount(lineCount);
}

// ...
// ...
}
```

Instead of placing all of the statements into `Main()`, the listing breaks them into groups called methods. The `System.Console.WriteLine()` statements that display the help text have been moved to the `DisplayHelpText()` method. All of the statements used to determine which files to count appear in the `GetFiles()` method. To actually count the lines, the code calls the `CountLines()` method before displaying the results using the `DisplayLineCount()` method. With a quick glance, it is easy to review the code and gain an overview, because the method name describes the purpose of the method.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

What Is a Function?

Functions are virtually identical to methods, used for grouping together a sequence of statements to perform a particular action or compute a particular result. In fact, frequently, *method* and *function* are used interchangeably. Technically, however, methods are always associated with a type—such as `Program` in Listing 5.1. In contrast, functions have no such association. A function doesn't necessarily have an owning type.

Guidelines

DO give methods names that are verbs or verb phrases.

A method provides a means of grouping related code together. Methods can receive data via **arguments** that are passed to the method **parameters**. Parameters are variables used for passing data from the **caller** (the code containing the method call or **invocation**) to the called or **invoked** method (`Write()`, `WriteLine()`, `GetFiles()`, `CountLines()`, and so on). In Listing 5.1, `files` and `lineCount` are examples of arguments passed to the `CountLines()` and `DisplayLineCount()` methods via their parameters. Methods can also return data to the caller via a **return value** (in Listing 5.1, the `GetFiles()` method call has a return value that is assigned to `files`).

To begin, we reexamine `System.Console.Write()`, `System.Console.WriteLine()`, and `System.Console.ReadLine()` from Chapter 1. This time we look at them as examples of method calls in general instead of looking at the specifics of printing and retrieving data from the console. Listing 5.2 shows each of the three methods in use.

LISTING 5.2: A Simple Method Call

```
public static void Main()
{
    string? firstName;
    string? lastName;

    Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

    Console.Write("Enter your first name: ");
    firstName = Console.ReadLine();

    Console.Write("Enter your last name: ");
    lastName = Console.ReadLine();

    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Your full name is { firstName } { lastName }.");
}
```

The parts of the method call include the method name, argument list, and returned value. A fully qualified method name includes a namespace, type name, and method name; a period separates each part of a fully qualified method name. As we saw in type names (<https://essentialcsharp.com/type-name-forms>) in Chapter 2, methods may also be called with only the last part of their fully qualified name.

Namespaces

Namespaces are a categorization mechanism for grouping all types related to a particular area of functionality. Namespaces are hierarchical and can have arbitrarily many levels in the hierarchy, though namespaces with more than half a dozen levels are rare. Typically, the hierarchy begins with a company name, and then a product name, and then the functional area. For example, in Microsoft `.Win32.Networking`, the outermost namespace is `Microsoft`, which contains an inner namespace `Win32`, which in turn contains an even more deeply nested `Networking` namespace.

Namespaces are primarily used to organize types by area of functionality so that they can be more easily found and understood. However, they can also be used to avoid type name collisions. For example, the compiler can distinguish between two types with the name `Button` as long as each type has a different namespace. Thus you can disambiguate types `System.Web.UI.WebControls.Button` and `System.Windows.Controls.Button`.

In Listing 5.2, the `Console` type is found within the `System` namespace. The `System` namespace contains the types that enable the programmer to perform many fundamental programming activities. Almost all C# programs use types within the `System` namespace. Table 5.1 provides a listing of other common namespaces.

TABLE 5.1: Common Namespaces

Namespace	Description
<code>System</code>	Contains the fundamental types and types for conversion between types, mathematics, program invocation, and environment management.
<code>System.Collections.Generic</code>	Contains strongly typed collections that use generics.
<code>System.Data.Entity</code>	A framework designed to store and retrieve data from a relational database through code generation that maps entities into tables.
<code>System.Drawing</code>	Contains types for drawing to the display device and working with images. Note, however, it is mostly Windows specific.

TABLE 5.1: Common Namespaces (continued)

Namespace	Description
System.IO	Contains types for working with directories and manipulating, loading, and saving files.
System.Linq	Contains classes and interfaces for querying data in collections using a Language Integrated Query.
System.Text	Contains types for working with strings and various text encodings and for converting between those encodings.
System.Text.RegularExpressions	Contains types for working with regular expressions.
System.Threading	Contains types for multithreaded programming.
System.Threading.Tasks	Contains types for task-based asynchrony.
System.Windows	Contains types for creating rich user interfaces when working with UI technologies such as Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF), or Windows UI Library (WinUI), leveraging Extensible Application Markup Language (XAML) for declarative design of the UI.
System.Xml.Linq	Contains standards-based support for XML processing using an object query language called LINQ (See Chapter 15).

It is not always necessary to provide the namespace when calling a method. For example, if the call expression appears in a type in the same namespace as the called method, the compiler can infer the namespace to be the namespace that contains the type. Later in this chapter, you will see how the using directive eliminates the need for a namespace qualifier as well.

Guidelines

DO use PascalCasing for namespace names.

CONSIDER organizing the directory hierarchy for source code files to match the namespace hierarchy.

Type Name

Calls to static methods require the type name qualifier as long as the target method is not within the same type.¹ (As discussed later in the chapter, a using static directive allows you to omit the type name.) For example, a call expression of `Console.WriteLine()` found in the method `HelloWorld.Main()` requires the type, `Console`, to be specified. However, just as with the namespace, C# allows the omission of the type name from a method call whenever the method is a member of the type containing the call expression. (Examples of method calls such as this appear in Listing 5.4.) The type name is unnecessary in such cases because the compiler infers the type from the location of the call. If the compiler can make no such inference, the name must be provided as part of the method call.

At their core, types are a means of grouping together methods and their associated data. For example, `Console` is the type that contains the `Write()`, `WriteLine()`, and `ReadLine()` methods (among others). All of these methods are in the same *group* because they belong to the `Console` type.

Scope

In Chapter 4, you learned that the *scope* of a program element is the region of text in which it can be referred to by its unqualified name. A call that appears inside a type declaration to a method declared in that type does not require the type qualifier because the method is in scope throughout its containing type. Similarly, a type is in scope throughout the namespace that declares it; therefore, a method call that appears in a type in a particular namespace need not specify that namespace in the method call name.

Method Name

Every method call contains a method name, which might or might not be qualified with a namespace and type name, as we have discussed. After the method name comes the argument list, which is a parenthesized, comma-separated list of the values that correspond to the parameters of the method.

1. Or base class.

Parameters and Arguments

A method can take any number of parameters, and each parameter is of a specific data type. The values that the caller supplies for parameters are called the **arguments**; every argument must correspond to a particular parameter. For example, the following method call has three arguments:

```
System.IO.File.Copy(  
oldFileName, newFileName, false)
```

The method is found on the class `File`, which is in the namespace `System.IO`. It is declared to have three parameters, with the first and second being of type `string` and the third being of type `bool`. In this example, we use variables (`oldFileName` and `newFileName`) of type `string` for the old and new filenames, and then specify `false` to indicate that the copy should fail if the new filename already exists.

Method Return Values

In contrast to `Console.WriteLine()`, the method call `Console.ReadLine()` in Listing 5.2 does not have any arguments because the method is declared to take no parameters. However, this method happens to have a **method return value**. The method return value is a means of transferring results from a called method back to the caller. Because `Console.ReadLine()` has a return value, it is possible to assign the return value to the variable `firstName`. In addition, it is possible to pass this method return value itself as an argument to another method call, as shown in Listing 5.3.

LISTING 5.3: Passing a Method Return Value as an Argument to Another Method Call

```
public static void Main()  
{  
    Console.Write("Enter your first name: ");  
    Console.WriteLine($"Hello { Console.ReadLine() }!");  
}
```

Instead of assigning the returned value to a variable and then using that variable as an argument to the call to `Console.WriteLine()`, Listing 5.3 calls the `Console.ReadLine()` method within the call to `Console.WriteLine()`. At

execution time, the `Console.ReadLine()` method executes first, and its return value is passed directly into the `Console.WriteLine()` method, rather than into a variable.

Not all methods return data. Both versions of `Console.Write()` and `Console.WriteLine()` are examples of such methods. As you will see shortly, these methods specify a return type of `void`, just as the `HelloWorld` declaration of `Main` returned `void`.

Statement versus Method Call

Listing 5.3 provides a demonstration of the difference between a statement and a method call. Although `Console.WriteLine($"Hello { System.Console.ReadLine()}!");` is a single statement, it contains two method calls. A statement often contains one or more expressions, and in this example, two of those expressions are method calls. Therefore, method calls form parts of statements.

Although coding multiple method calls in a single statement often reduces the amount of code, it does not necessarily increase the readability and seldom offers a significant performance advantage. Developers should favor readability over brevity.

NOTE

In general, developers should favor readability over brevity. Readability is critical to writing code that is self-documenting and therefore more maintainable over time.

Declaring a Method

This section expands on the explanation of declaring a method to include parameters or a return type. Listing 5.4 contains examples of these concepts, and Output 5.1 shows the results.

LISTING 5.4: Declaring a Method

```
public class IntroducingMethods
{
    public static void Main()
```

```

{
    string firstName;
    string lastName;
    string fullName;
    string initials;

    Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

    firstName = Get userInput("Enter your first name: ");
    lastName = Get userInput("Enter your last name: ");

    fullName = GetFullName(firstName, lastName);
    initials = GetInitials(firstName, lastName);
    DisplayGreeting(fullName, initials);
}

static string Get userInput(string prompt)
{
    Console.Write(prompt);
    return Console.ReadLine() ?? string.Empty;
}

static string GetFullName(
    string firstName, string lastName) =>
    $"{ firstName } { lastName }";

static void DisplayGreeting(string fullName, string initials)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hello { fullName }! Your initials are { initials }");
    return;
}

static string GetInitials(string firstName, string lastName)
{
    return $"{ firstName[0] }. { lastName[0] }. ";
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.1

```

Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo

```

```
Enter your last name: Montoya  
Hello Inigo Montoya! Your initials are I. M.
```

Listing 5.4 declares five methods. From `Main()` the code calls `GetUserInput()`, followed by a call to `GetFullName()` and `GetInitials()`. All of the last three methods return a value and take arguments. In addition, the listing calls `DisplayGreeting()`, which doesn't return any data.

Language Contrast: C++/Visual Basic—Global Methods

C# provides no global method support; everything must appear within a type declaration. This is why the `Main()` method was marked as `static`—the C# equivalent of a C++ global and Visual Basic “shared” method. The statements that appear independent from a method and the methods that appear independent from a class are even conforming to this rule because the C# compiler generates the surrounding method and class for these seemingly independent constructs. For more information, see “Top-Level Statements” later in this chapter.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

Refactoring into Methods

Moving a set of statements into a method instead of leaving them inline within a larger method is a form of **refactoring**. Refactoring reduces code duplication, because you can call the method from multiple places instead of duplicating the code. Refactoring also increases code readability. As part of the coding process, it is a best practice to continually review your code and look for opportunities to refactor. This involves looking for blocks of code that are difficult to understand at a glance and moving them into a method with a name that clearly defines the code's behavior. This practice is often preferred over adding comments to a block of code, because the method name serves to describe what the implementation does. Listing 5.4 is easy to grasp at a glance by just viewing the `Main()` method and not worrying about the details of each called method's implementation.

Visual Studio allows you to right-click on a block of code within a method and click **Quick Actions and Refactorings...** (Ctrl+.) to extract the block into its own method, automatically inserting code to call the new method from the original location.

Formal Parameter Declaration

Consider the declarations of the `DisplayGreeting()`, `GetFullName()`, and the `GetInitials()` methods. The text that appears between the parentheses of a method declaration is the **formal parameter list**. (As we will see when we discuss generics, methods may also have a **type parameter list**. When it is clear from the context which kind of parameters we are discussing, we simply refer to them as *parameters* in a *parameter list*.) Each parameter in the parameter list includes the type of the parameter along with the parameter name. A comma separates each parameter in the list.

Behaviorally, most parameters are virtually identical to local variables, and the naming convention of parameters follows accordingly. Therefore, parameter names use camelCase. Also, it is not possible to declare a local variable (a variable declared inside a method) with the same name as a parameter of the containing method, because this would create two local variables of the same name.

Guidelines

DO use camelCasing for parameter names.

Method Return Type Declaration

In addition to `GetUserInput()`, `GetFullName()`, and the `GetInitials()` methods requiring parameters to be specified, each of these methods includes a **method return type**. You can tell that a method returns a value because a data type appears immediately before the method name in the method declaration. Each of these method examples specifies a `string` return type. Unlike parameters, of which there can be any number, only one method return type is allowable.

As with `GetUserInput()` and `GetInitials()`, methods with a return type almost always² contain one or more `return` statements that return control to the caller. A `return` statement consists of the `return` keyword followed by an expression that computes the value the method is returning. For example, the `GetInitials()` method's return statement is `return $"{ firstName[0] }. { lastName[0] }.";`. The expression (an interpolated string in this case) following the `return` keyword must be compatible with the stated return type of the method.

If a method has a return type, the block of statements that makes up the body of the method must not have an *unreachable end point*. That is, there must be no way for control to “fall off the end” of a method without returning a value. Often the easiest way to ensure that this condition is met is to make the last statement of the method a `return` statement. However, `return` statements can appear in locations other than at the end of a method implementation. For example, an `if` or `switch` statement in a method implementation could include a `return` statement within it; see Listing 5.5 for an example.

LISTING 5.5: A return Statement before the End of a Method

```
public class Program
{
    // ...

    public static bool MyMethod()
    {
        string command = ObtainCommand();
        switch(command)
        {
            case "quit":
                return false;
            // ... omitted, other cases
            default:
                return true;
        }
    }
}
```

2. For example, you could throw an exception instead.


```
    // ...  
}
```

(Note that a `return` statement transfers control out of the `switch`, so no `break` statement is required to prevent illegal fall-through in a `switch` section that ends with a `return` statement.)

In Listing 5.5, the last statement in the method is not a `return` statement; it is a `switch` statement. However, the compiler can deduce that every possible code path through the method results in a `return`, so that the end point of the method is not reachable. Thus, this method is legal even though it does not end with a `return` statement.

If particular code paths include unreachable statements following the `return`, the compiler will issue a warning that indicates the additional statements will never execute.

Though C# allows a method to have multiple `return` statements, code is generally more readable and easier to maintain if there is a single exit location rather than having multiple returns sprinkled through various code paths of the method.

Specifying `void` as a return type indicates that there is no return value from the method. As a result, a call to the method may not be assigned to a variable or used as a parameter type at the call site. A `void` method call may be used only as a statement. Furthermore, within the body of the method the `return` statement becomes optional, and when it is specified, there must be no value following the `return` keyword. For example, the return of `Main()` in Listing 5.4 is `void`, and there is no `return` statement within the method. However, `DisplayGreeting()` includes an (optional) `return` statement that is not followed by any returned result.

Although, technically, a method can have only one return type, the return type could be a tuple. As a result, starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to return multiple values packaged as a tuple using C# tuple syntax. For example, you could declare a `GetName()` method, as shown in Listing 5.6.

LISTING 5.6: Returning Multiple Values Using a Tuple

```
public class Program  
{  
    static string GetUserInput(string prompt)  
    {
```

```

        Console.Write(prompt);
        return Console.ReadLine() ?? string.Empty;
    }
    static (string First, string Last) GetName()
    {
        string firstName, lastName;
        firstName = GetUserInput("Enter your first name: ");
        lastName = GetUserInput("Enter your last name: ");
        return (firstName, lastName);
    }
    static public void Main()
    {
        (string First, string Last) name = GetName();
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello { name.First } { name.Last }!");
    }
}

```

Technically, we are still returning only one data type, a `ValueTuple<string, string>`. However, effectively, you can return any (preferably reasonable) number you like using each item within the tuple.

Expression Bodied Methods

To support the simplest of method declarations without the formality of a method body, C# 6.0 introduced **expression bodied methods**, which are declared using an expression rather than a full method body. Listing 5.4’s `GetFullName()` method provides an example of the expression bodied method:

```
static string GetFullName( string firstName, string lastName) =>
```

In place of the curly brackets typical of a method body, an expression bodied method uses the “goes to” operator (fully introduced in Chapter 13), for which the resulting data type must match the return type of the method. In other words, even though there is no explicit `return` statement in the expression bodied method implementation, it is still necessary that the return type from the expression match the method declaration’s return type.

Expression bodied methods are syntactic shortcuts to the fuller method body declaration. As such, their use should be limited to the simplest of method implementations—generally expressible on a single line.

Language Contrast: C++—Header Files

Unlike in C++, C# classes never separate the implementation from the declaration. In C#, there is no header (.h) file or implementation (.cpp) file. Instead, declaration and implementation appear together in the same file. (C# does support an advanced feature called *partial methods*, in which the method's defining declaration is separate from its implementation, but for the purposes of this chapter, we consider only nonpartial methods.) The lack of a separate declaration and implementation in C# removes the requirement to maintain redundant declaration information in two places found in languages that have separate header and implementation files, such as C++.

Local Functions

C# 7.0 introduced the ability to declare functions within methods. In other words, rather than always declaring a method within a class, the method (technically a function) could be declared within another method (see Listing 5.7).

LISTING 5.7: Declaring a Local Function

```
public static void Main()
{
    string GetUserInput(string prompt)
    {
        string? input;
        do
        {
            Console.Write(prompt + ": ");
            input = Console.ReadLine();
        }
        while(string.IsNullOrEmpty(input));
        return input!;
    };

    string firstName = GetUserInput("First Name");
    string lastName = GetUserInput("Last Name");
    string email = GetUserInput("Email Address");

    Console.WriteLine($"{firstName} {lastName} <{email}>");
    //...
```

This language construct is called a **local function**. The reason to declare it like this is that the function's scope is limited to invocation from within the method where it is declared. Outside of the method's scope, it is not possible to call the local function. In addition, the local function can access local variables in the method that are declared before the local function. Alternatively, this can explicitly be prevented by adding the `static` to the beginning of the local function declaration (see "Static Anonymous Functions" (<https://essentialcsharp.com/outer-variables>) in Chapter 13).

Using Directives

Fully qualified namespace names can become quite long and unwieldy. It is possible, however, to import all the types from one or more namespaces so that they can be used without full qualification.

Using Directive Overview

Rather than a declarative that applies to the entire project, C# includes a using directive that applies only to the current file. For example, Listing 5.8 (with Output 5.2) doesn't prefix `Regex` with `System.Text.RegularExpressions`. The namespace may be omitted because of the `using System.Text.RegularExpressions` directive that appears at the top of the listing.

LISTING 5.8: Using Directive Example

```
// The using directive imports all types from the
// specified namespace into the entire file
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        const string firstName = "FirstName";
        const string initial = "Initial";
        const string lastName = "LastName";

        // Explaining regular expressions is beyond the
        // scope of this book.
```

```

// See https://www.regular-expressions.info/ for
// more information.
const string pattern = @"
    (?<{firstName}>\w+)\s+(?<{
    initial}>\w)\.\s+)?(?<{
    lastName}>\w+)\s*
    ";

Console.WriteLine(
    "Enter your full name (e.g. Inigo T. Montoya): ");
string name = Console.ReadLine(!);

// No need to qualify RegEx type with
// System.Text.RegularExpressions because
// of the using directive above
Match match = RegEx.Match(name, pattern);

if (match.Success)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"{firstName}: {match.Groups[firstName]}");
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"{initial}: {match.Groups[initial]}");
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"{lastName}: {match.Groups[lastName]}");
}
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.2

```
Hello, my name is Inigo Montoya
```

A using directive such as using System.Text does not enable you to omit System.Text from a type declared within a **nested namespace** such as System.Text.RegularExpressions. For example, if your code accessed the RegEx type from the System.Text.RegularExpressions namespace, you would have to either include an additional using System.Text.RegularExpressions directive or fully qualify the type as System.Text.RegularExpressions.RegEx, not just RegularExpressions.RegEx. In short, a using directive does not import types from any nested namespaces. Nested

namespaces, which are identified by the period in the namespace, always need to be imported explicitly.

Language Contrast: Java—Wildcards in the import Directive

Java enables importing namespaces using a wildcard such as the following:

```
import javax.swing.*;
```

In contrast, C# does not support a wildcard using directive but instead requires each namespace to be imported explicitly.

Frequent use of types within a particular namespace implies that the addition of a using directive for that namespace is a good idea, instead of fully qualifying all types within the namespace. Accordingly, almost all C# files include the `using System` directive at the top. Throughout the remainder of this book, code listings often omit the `using System` directive from the manuscript. Other namespace directives are generally included explicitly, however.

One interesting effect of the `using System` directive is that the string data type can be identified with varying case: `String` or `string`. The former version relies on the `using System` directive, and the latter uses the `string` keyword. Both are valid C# references to the `System.String` data type, and the resultant Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code is unaffected by which version is chosen.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

Namespaces

As described earlier, **namespaces** are an organizational mechanism for categorizing and grouping together related types. Developers can discover related types by examining other types within the same namespace as a familiar type. Additionally, through namespaces, two or more types may have the same name as long as they are disambiguated by different namespaces.

Implicit Using Directives

Readers will recall from Chapter 1 there was an `ImplicitUsings` element within the `.csproj` file for C# 10.0 and later:

```
<ImplicitUsings>enable</ImplicitUsings>
```

In addition, the source code consistently refers to things like `Console`, even though the fully qualified name is `System.Console`. The ability to abbreviate is afforded by the `ImplicitUsings` element, which tells the compiler to infer the namespace automatically rather than require the programmer to provide it. Using directives, therefore, allows the use of type identifiers without specifying their fully qualified name. To accomplish this, the compiler generates global using directives whenever the `ImplicitUsings` element is set to `enable`.

Global Using Directives

If you search the subdirectory of a C# 10.0 (or higher) project, you will notice there is a file with the extension `.GlobalUsing.g.cs`, generally found in an `obj` folder subdirectory, and it contains multiple global using directives such as those found in Listing 5.9.

LISTING 5.9: Implicit Usings Generated Global Using Declaratives³

```
// <auto-generated/>  
global using global::System;  
global using global::System.Collections.Generic;  
global using global::System.IO;  
global using global::System.Linq;  
global using global::System.Net.Http;  
global using global::System.Threading;  
global using global::System.Threading.Tasks;
```

3. Although removed from this listing for elucidation purposes, the generated global using statements prefix the namespace with “`global::`” as in `global using global::System`. Discussion of namespace alias qualifiers appears later in the section.

Each of these lines⁴ is a global using directive that tells the compiler to imply the namespace qualifier for any type that appears within the namespace specified. For example, `global using global::System` allows implicit using directives like `Console.WriteLine("Hello! My name is Inigo Montoya!")` rather than the fully qualified name `System.Console.WriteLine(...)` because `Console` is defined in the `System` namespace.

Of course, you can provide your own global using declaratives. Say, for example, you frequently are using the `System.Text.StringBuilder` class (initially introduced in Chapter 2). Instead of always referring to it by the fully qualified name, you can provide a global using directive for the `System.Text` namespace and then just refer to the type using the abbreviation `StringBuilder` (see Listing 5.10), also still relying on implicit usings for `System.Console`.

LISTING 5.10: Implicit Using Directives with `StringBuilder`

```
// The global using directive imports all types from
// the specified namespace into the project
global using System.Text;
// ...
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // See Chapter 6 for explanation of new();
        StringBuilder name = new();

        Console.WriteLine("Enter your first name: ");
        name.Append(Console.ReadLine()!.Trim());

        Console.WriteLine("Enter your middle initial: ");
        name.Append( $" { Console.ReadLine()!.Trim('.')}.Trim() }. " );

        Console.WriteLine("Enter your last name: ");
        name.Append($" { Console.ReadLine()!.Trim() }");

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello {name}!");
    }
}
```

4. Ignoring the comment that shows the code was generated by the compiler.

The global using directives applies to the entire project regardless of in which file it appears. And, although C# allows the same global using declarative multiple times, doing so is redundant. For this reason, it is preferable to place all the global using directives into a single file named `Usings.cs` by convention. Collocating them here also provides a well-known location to place them or remove such declaratives.

While global using directives apply to the entire project, C# also supports using directives that apply only to the current file. The global using declarative, however, must appear before any other (non-global) using directives, which we cover after the `.csproj` using element.

csproj Using Element

It is also possible to specify global using declaratives within your project (`.csproj`) file with a `Using` element, as shown in Listing 5.11

LISTING 5.11: Sample .NET Console Project File with Using Element

```
<Project Sdk="Microsoft.NET.Sdk">
  <PropertyGroup>
    <OutputType>Exe</OutputType>
    <TargetFramework>net7.0</TargetFramework>
    <ImplicitUsings>enable</ImplicitUsings>
    <Nullable>enable</Nullable>
  </PropertyGroup>
  <ItemGroup>
    <Using Include="System.Net" />
    <Using Static="true" Include="System.Console"/>
  </ItemGroup>
</Project>
```

The important thing to note is that unlike the `ImplicitUsings` element, the `Using` element is a subelement to the `ItemGroup` element rather than the `PropertyGroup` element. And, given the `Using` element for `System.Net` specified, it is no longer necessary to fully qualify `HttpClient`, which is part of the `System.Net` namespace. Instead, the compiler will generate a global using `System.Net` directive when building the project. There is also another `Using` statement that includes a `Static` attribute on it, which we will explain further in the next section.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

Nested Using Directives

Not only can you have using directives at the top of a file, but you can also include them at the top of a namespace declaration. For example, if a new namespace, `EssentialCSharp`, were declared, it would be possible to add a using declarative at the top of the namespace declaration (see Listing 5.12).

LISTING 5.12: Specifying the using Directive inside a Namespace Declaration

```
// The using directive imports all types from the
// specified namespace into the entire file
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // ...
        // No need to qualify RegEx type with
        // System.Text.RegularExpressions because
        // of the using directive above
        Match match = Regex.Match(name, pattern);
        // ...
    }
}
```

The difference between placing the using directive at the top of a file and placing it at the top of a namespace declaration is that the directive is active only within the namespace declaration. If the code includes a new namespace declaration above or below the `EssentialCSharp` declaration, the using `System` directive within a different namespace would not be active. Code seldom is written this way, especially given the standard practice of providing a single type declaration per file.

Using Static Directive

The using directive allows you to abbreviate a type name by omitting the namespace portion of the name—such that just the type name can be specified for any type within the stated namespace. In contrast, the using static directive allows you to omit

both the namespace and the type name from any static member of the stated type. A `using static System.Console` directive, for example, allows you to specify `WriteLine()` rather than the fully qualified method name of `System.Console.WriteLine()`. Continuing with this example, we can update Listing 5.2 to leverage the `using static System.Console` directive to create Listing 5.13.

LISTING 5.13: Using Static Directive

```
using static System.Console;

public class HeyYou
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string firstName;
        string lastName;

        WriteLine("Hey you!");

        Write("Enter your first name: ");
        firstName = ReadLine() ?? string.Empty;

        Write("Enter your last name: ");
        lastName = ReadLine() ?? string.Empty;

        WriteLine(
            $"Your full name is { firstName } { lastName }.");
    }
}
```

In this case, there is no loss of readability of the code: `WriteLine()`, `Write()`, and `ReadLine()` all clearly relate to a console directive. In fact, one could argue that the resulting code is simpler and therefore clearer than before.

However, sometimes this is not the case. For example, if your code uses classes that have overlapping behavior names, such as an `Exists()` method on a file and an `Exists()` method on a directory, then a `using static` directive would reduce clarity when you invoke `Exists()`. Similarly, if the class you were writing had its own members with overlapping behavior names—for example, `Display()` and `Write()`—then clarity would be lost to the reader.

This ambiguity would not be allowed by the compiler. If two members with the same signature were available (through either using static directives or separately declared members), any invocation of them that was ambiguous would result in a compile error.

Note that C# 10 or later also support global static using directives such as:

```
global using static System.Console;
```

Similarly, a global using static directive can be configured in the csproj file:

```
<Using Static="true" Include="System.Console"/>
```

This is also shown in Listing 5.11.

Aliasing

Starting in C# 12.0, the using directive also allows **aliasing** a namespace or any type including tuples, pointers (Chapter 23), array types, and generic types (Chapter 12). An alias is an alternative name that you can use within the text to which the using directive applies. The two most common reasons for aliasing are to disambiguate two types that have the same name and to abbreviate a long name. In Listing 5.14, for example, the `CountDownTimer` alias is declared as a means of referring to the type `System.Timers.Timer`. Simply adding a `using System.Timers` directive will not sufficiently enable the code to avoid fully qualifying the `Timer` type. The reason is that `System.Threading` also includes a type called `Timer`; therefore, using just `Timer` within the code will be ambiguous.

LISTING 5.14: Declaring a Type Alias

```
using CountdownTimer = System.Timers.Timer;
using StartStop = (DateTime Start, DateTime Stop);

public class HelloWorld
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        CountdownTimer timer;
        StartStop startStop;
```

Begin 10.0

End 10.0

Begin 12.0

```

    } // ...
}

```

Listing 5.14 uses an entirely new name, `CountDownTimer`, as the alias. It is possible, however, to specify the alias as `Timer`, as shown in Listing 5.15.

LISTING 5.15: Declaring a Type Alias with the Same Name

```

// Declare alias Timer to refer to System.Timers.Timer to
// avoid code ambiguity with System.Threading.Timer
using Timer = System.Timers.Timer;

public class HelloWorld
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        Timer timer;

        // ...
    }
}

```

Because of the alias directive, “Timer” is not an ambiguous reference. Furthermore, to refer to the `System.Threading.Timer` type, you will have to either qualify the type or define a different alias.

Of course, C# 10 and later also support global aliasing using directives such as:

```
global using Timer = Timers.Timer;
```

And like with all other global using directives, a global using alias directive can be configured in the csproj file:

```
<Using Include=" System.Timers.Timer" Alias="Timer"/>
```

Returns and Parameters on Main Method

So far, declaration of an executable’s `Main` method has been the simplest declaration possible. You have not included any parameters or non-void return type in your

Main method declarations. However, C# supports the ability to retrieve the command-line arguments when executing a program, and it is possible to return a status indicator from the Main method.

The runtime passes the command-line arguments to `Main()` using a single string array parameter—named `args` by convention. All you need to do to retrieve the parameters is to access the array, as demonstrated in Listing 5.16 with Output 5.3. The output shows a run with no parameters and a second run with two parameters. The purpose of this program is to download a file whose location is specified by a URL. The first command-line argument identifies the URL, and the second argument is the filename to which to save the file. The listing begins with a switch statement that evaluates the number of parameters (`args.Length`) as follows:

1. If there are not two parameters, display an error indicating that it is necessary to provide the URL and filename.
2. The presence of two arguments indicates the user has provided both the URL of the resource and the download target filename.

LISTING 5.16: Passing Command-Line Arguments to a Main Method

```
public class Program
{
    public static int Main(string[] args)
    {
        int result;
        if(args?.Length != 2 )
        {
            // Exactly two arguments must be specified; give an error
            Console.WriteLine(
                "ERROR: You must specify the "
                + "URL and the file name");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Usage: Downloader.exe <URL> <TargetFileName>");
            result = 1;
        }
        else
        {
            string urlString = args[0];
            string fileName = args[1];
        }
    }
}
```

```

        HttpClient client = new();
        byte[] response =
            client.GetByteArrayAsync(urlString).Result;
        client.Dispose();
        File.WriteAllBytes(fileName, response);
        Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded '{ fileName }' from '{
↵urlString }'.");
        result = 0;
    }
    return result;
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.3

```

>Downloader
ERROR: You must specify the URL and the file name
Usage: Downloader.exe <URL> <TargetFileName>
>Downloader https://IntelliTect.com Index.html
Downloaded 'Index.html' from 'https://IntelliTect.com'.

```

If you were successful in calculating the target filename, you would use it to save the downloaded file. Otherwise, you would display the help text. The `Main()` method also returns an `int` rather than a `void`. This is optional for a `Main` method declarations, but if it is used, the program can return an exit code to a caller (such as a script or a batch file). By convention, a return other than zero indicates an error.

Although all command-line arguments can be passed to `Main()` via an array of strings, sometimes it is convenient to access the arguments from inside a method other than `Main()`. The `System.Environment.GetCommandLineArgs()` method returns the command-line arguments array in the same form that `Main(string[] args)` passes the arguments into the `Main` method except that the first item in the array is the executable filename.

To download the file, Listing 5.16 uses a `System.Net.Http.HttpClient` object but only specified `HttpClient`—its namespace is imported by the `ImplicitUsings` element in the `.csproj` file.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

Disambiguate Multiple Main Methods

If a program includes two classes with Main methods, it is possible to specify which one to use as the entry point. In Visual Studio, right-clicking on the project from Solution Explorer and selecting **Properties** provides a user interface on top of the project file. By selecting the **Application** tab on the left, you can edit the Startup Object and select which type's Main method will start the program. The result will be an additional element in the PropertyGroup:

```
<StartupObject>AddisonWesley.Michaelis.EssentialCSharp.  
  Shared.Program  
</StartupObject>
```

On the command line, you can specify the same value, setting the StartupObject property when running a build. For example:

```
dotnet build /p:StartupObject=AddisonWesley.Program2
```

where AddisonWesley.Program2 is the namespace and class that contains the selected Main method. (In fact, any item in the PropertyGroup section of a csproj file can be specified on the command line this way.)

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

Call Stack and Call Site

As code executes, methods call more methods, which in turn call additional methods, and so on. In the simple case of Listing 5.4, Main() calls GetUserInput(), which in turn calls System.Console.ReadLine(), which in turn calls even more methods internally. Every time a new method is invoked, the runtime creates an *activation frame* that contains information about the arguments passed to the new call, the local variables of the new call, and information about where control should resume when the new method returns. The set of calls within calls within calls, and so on, produces a series of activation frames that is termed the **call stack**.⁵ As

5. Except for async or iterator methods, which move their activator records onto the heap.

program complexity increases, the call stack generally gets larger and larger as each method calls another method. As calls complete, however, the call stack shrinks until another method is invoked. The process of removing activation frames from the call stack is termed **stack unwinding**. Stack unwinding always occurs in the reverse order of the method calls. When the method completes, execution returns to the **call site**—that is, the location from which the method was invoked.

Begin 9.0

Top-Level Statements

Until C# 9.0, all executable code in C# was required to appear within a type definition and a member such as a method within a type. As we saw in Listing 1.1, this is no longer required. Instead, it is possible for a single file to have **top-level statements**, statements that appear independent of any type definition and even without a Main method. Such statements are allowed in only one file, and they will be the first statements to execute within the program—the equivalent of the many statements that appear in the Main method. In fact, given top-level statements, the compiler generates a class called Program that wraps the top-level statements and places them into a Main method. Furthermore, the method has a contextual keyword—`args`—that is the equivalent of the `string[] args` parameter of a Main method.

With top-level statements, C# syntax allows the statements outside a method as a simplification—especially for new C# developers familiar with other languages that are less structured—but then moves these statements into the Main method at compiler time. The end result, therefore, is that there are never any statements in the underlying CIL that are not placed within a type definition and within a type member.

Since the C# compiler moves top-level methods into its own generated main method that is defined within a class named Program, the compiler issues an error if you try to define an additional class called Program.⁶ One additional restriction

6. As the compiler warning indicates, you could define a Program class as partial, indicating that the two definitions will be merged into the same Program class. For more information, see “Partial Classes” in Chapter 6.

on top-level statements is that any type definition within the same file as the top-level statements must appear after such statements.

The file with top-level statements can also contain methods, which we will call **top-level methods**, and such methods can optionally appear independent of a type definition as well.

When running some of the New Project wizards in Visual Studio, there is frequently an option called “Do not use top-level statements” that allows you to choose whether to go with the simpler version or to generate the structure explicitly, resulting in code that looks more like Listing 1.1 (without a class or Main method). Similarly, on the dotnet command line, some of the project templates (i.e., the Console argument when running the `dotnet new Console` command) frequently have a `--use-program-main` option. However, top-level statements are available to only those projects that have entry points, in other words, Main methods. The compiler doesn’t allow top-level statements on programs that do not have Main methods (such as class libraries).

Top-level statements were mainly introduced to remove unnecessary ceremony when writing simple programs, reducing the complexity for beginners especially. Prior to top-level statements, a program with a single statement would require both a type definition and a Main method just to code the single statement. With top-level statements, this structure is optionally eliminated. In addition, top-level statements allow for easier embedding of seemingly complete C# snippets within text like Polyglot notebooks (<https://github.com/dotnet/interactive>) or the online version of this book (<https://essentialcsharp.com>).

End 9.0

Advanced Method Parameters

So far this chapter’s examples have returned data via the method return value. This section demonstrates how methods can return data via their method parameters and how a method may take a variable number of arguments.

Value Parameters

Arguments to method calls are usually **passed by value**, which means the value of the argument expression is copied into the target parameter. For example, in Listing

5.17, the value of each variable that `Main()` uses when calling `Combine()` will be copied into the parameters of the `Combine()` method. Output 5.4 shows the results of this listing.

LISTING 5.17: Passing Variables by Value

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // ...
        string fullName;
        string driveLetter = "C: ";
        string folderPath = "Data";
        string fileName = "index.html";

        fullName = Combine(driveLetter, folderPath, fileName);

        Console.WriteLine(fullName);
        // ...
    }

    static string Combine(
        string driveLetter, string folderPath, string fileName)
    {
        string path;
        path = string.Format("{1}{0}{2}{0}{3}",
            Path.DirectorySeparatorChar,
            driveLetter, folderPath, fileName);
        return path;
    }
}
```

OUTPUT 5.4

```
C:\Users\Inigo\Data\index.html
```

Even if the `Combine()` method assigned `null` to `driveLetter`, `folderPath`, and `fileName` before returning, the corresponding variables within `Main()` will maintain their original values because the variables are copied when calling a method. When the call stack unwinds at the end of a call, the copied data is thrown away.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

Matching Caller Variables with Parameter Names

In Listing 5.17, the variable names in the caller exactly matched the parameter names in the called method. This matching is provided simply for readability purposes, whether names match is irrelevant to the behavior of the method call. The parameters of the called method and the local variables of the calling method are found in different declaration spaces and have nothing to do with each other.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

Reference Types versus Value Types

For the purposes of this section, it is inconsequential whether the parameter passed is a value type or a reference type. Rather, the important issue is whether the called method can write a value into the caller's original variable. Since a copy of the caller variable's value is made, the caller's variable cannot be reassigned. Nevertheless, it is helpful to understand the difference between a variable that contains a value type and a variable that contains a reference type.

The value of a reference type variable is, as the name implies, a reference to the location where the data associated with the object is stored. How the runtime chooses to represent the value of a reference type variable is an implementation detail of the runtime; typically, it is represented as the address of the memory location in which the object's data is stored, but it need not be.

If a reference type variable is passed by value, the reference itself is copied from the caller to the method parameter. As a result, the target method cannot update the caller variable's value, but it may update the data referred to by the reference.

Alternatively, if the method parameter is a value type, the value itself is copied into the parameter, and changing the parameter in the called method will not affect the original caller's variable.

Reference Parameters (ref)

Consider Listing 5.18, which calls a function to swap two values, and Output 5.5, which shows the results.

LISTING 5.18: Passing Variables by Reference

```
public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        // ...
        string first = "hello";
        string second = "goodbye";
        Swap(ref first, ref second);

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"{@"first = ""{ first }"", second = ""{ second }"""});
        // ...
    }

    static void Swap(ref string x, ref string y)
    {
        string temp = x;
        x = y;
        y = temp;
    }
}
```

OUTPUT 5.5

```
first = "goodbye", second = "hello"
```

The values assigned to `first` and `second` are successfully switched. To do this, the variables are **passed by reference**. The obvious difference between the call to `Swap()` and Listing 5.17's call to `Combine()` is the inclusion of the keyword `ref` in front of the parameter's data type. This keyword changes the call such that the variables used as arguments are passed by reference, so the called method can update the original caller's variables with new values.

When the called method specifies a parameter as `ref`, the caller is required to supply a variable, not a value, as an argument and to place `ref` in front of the variables passed. In so doing, the caller explicitly recognizes that the target method

could reassign the values of the variables associated with any `ref` parameters it receives. Furthermore, it is necessary to initialize any local variables passed as `ref` because target methods could read data from `ref` parameters without first assigning them. In Listing 5.18, for example, `temp` is assigned the value of `first`, assuming that the variable passed in `first` was initialized by the caller. Effectively, a `ref` parameter is an alias for the variable passed. In other words, it is essentially giving a parameter name to an existing variable, rather than creating a new variable and copying the value of the argument into it.

NOTE

The `ref` modifier assigns a parameter to refer to an existing variable on the stack rather than creating a new variable and copying the argument value into the parameters.

Output Parameters (out)

As mentioned earlier, a variable used as a `ref` parameter must be assigned before it is passed to the called method, because the called method might read from the variable. The “swap” example given previously must read and write from both variables passed to it. However, it is often the case that a method that takes a reference to a variable intends to write to the variable but not to read from it. In such cases, clearly it could be safe to pass an uninitialized local variable by reference.

To achieve this, code needs to decorate parameter types with the keyword `out`. This is demonstrated in the `TryGetPhoneNumber()` method in Listing 5.19, which returns the phone button corresponding to a character.

LISTING 5.19: Passing Variables Out Only

```
public static int Main(string[] args)
{
    if(args.Length == 0)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "ConvertToPhoneNumber.exe <phrase>");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```

        "'_' indicates no standard phone button");
    return 1;
}
foreach(string word in args)
{
    foreach(char character in word)
    {
        if (TryGetPhoneButton(character, out char button))
        {
            Console.Write(button);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.Write('_');
        }
    }
}
Console.WriteLine();
return 0;
}

```

```

static bool TryGetPhoneButton(char character, out char button)
{
    bool success = true;
    switch(char.ToLower(character))
    {
        case '1':
            button = '1';
            break;
        case '2':
        case 'a':
        case 'b':
        case 'c':
            button = '2';
            break;

        // ...

        case '-':
            button = '-';
            break;
        default:
            // Set the button to indicate an invalid value
            button = '_';
            success = false;
            break;
    }
}

```

```

    return success;
}

```

Output 5.6 shows the results of Listing 5.19.

OUTPUT 5.6

```

>ConvertToPhoneNumber.exe CSharpIsGood
274277474663

```

In this example, the `TryGetPhoneButton()` method returns `true` if it can successfully determine the character's corresponding phone button. The function also returns the corresponding button by using the `button` parameter, which is decorated with `out`.

An `out` parameter is functionally identical to a `ref` parameter; the only difference is which requirements the language enforces regarding how the aliased variable is read from and written to. Whenever a parameter is marked with `out`, the compiler checks that the parameter is set for all code paths within the method that return normally (i.e., the code paths that do not throw an exception). If, for example, the code does not assign `button` a value in some code path, the compiler will issue an error indicating that the code didn't initialize `button`. Listing 5.19 assigns `button` to the underscore character because even though it cannot determine the correct phone button, it is still necessary to assign a value.

A common coding mistake when working with `out` parameters is to forget to declare the `out` variable before you use it. Starting with C# 7.0, it is possible to declare the `out` variable inline when invoking the function. Listing 5.19 uses this feature with the statement `TryGetPhoneButton(character, out char button)` without ever declaring the `button` variable beforehand. Prior to C# 7.0, it would be necessary to first declare the `button` variable and then invoke the function with `TryGetPhoneButton(character, out button)`.

Another C# 7.0 feature is the ability to discard an `out` parameter entirely. If, for example, you simply wanted to know whether a character was a valid phone button but not actually return the numeric value, you could discard the `button` parameter using an underscore: `TryGetPhoneButton(character, out _)`.

Prior to C# 7.0's tuple syntax, a developer of a method might declare one or more `out` parameters to get around the restriction that a method may have only one return

type; a method that needs to return two values can do so by returning one value normally, as the return value of the method, and a second value by writing it into an aliased variable passed as an out parameter. Although this pattern is both common and legal, there are usually better ways to achieve that aim. For example, if you are considering returning two or more values from a method and C# 7.0 is available, it is likely preferable to use C# 7.0 tuple syntax. Prior to that, consider writing two methods, one for each value, or still using the `System.ValueTuple` type but without C# 7.0 syntax.

NOTE

Each and every normal code path must result in the assignment of all out parameters.

Read-Only Pass by Reference (in)

In C# 7.2, support was added for passing a value type by reference that was read only. Rather than passing the value type to a function so that it could be changed, read-only pass by reference was added: It allows the value type to be passed by reference so that not only copy of the value type occurs but, in addition, the invoked method cannot change the value. In other words, the purpose of the feature is to reduce the memory copied when passing a value while still identifying it as read only, thus improving the performance. This syntax is to add an `in` modifier to the parameter. For example:

```
int Method(in int number) { ... }
```

With the `in` modifier, any attempts to reassign `number` (`number++`, for example) results in a compile error indicating that `number` is read only.

Return by Reference

Another C# 7.0 addition is support for returning a reference to a variable. Consider, for example, a function that returns the first pixel in an image that is associated with red-eye, as shown in Listing 5.20.

LISTING 5.20: `ref` Return and `ref` Local Declaration

```
// Returning a reference
public static ref byte FindFirstRedEyePixel(byte[] image)
{
    // Do fancy image detection perhaps with machine learning
    for (int counter = 0; counter < image.Length; counter++)
    {
        if (image[counter] == (byte)ConsoleColor.Red)
        {
            return ref image[counter];
        }
    }
    throw new InvalidOperationException("No pixels are red.");
}

public static void Main()
{
    byte[] image = new byte[254];
    // Load image
    int index = new Random().Next(0, image.Length - 1);
    image[index] =
        (byte)ConsoleColor.Red;
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"image[{index}]={{(ConsoleColor)image[index]}}");
    // ...

    // Obtain a reference to the first red pixel
    ref byte redPixel = ref FindFirstRedEyePixel(image);
    // Update it to be Black
    redPixel = (byte)ConsoleColor.Black;
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"image[{index}]={{(ConsoleColor)image[redPixel]}}");
}
```

By returning a reference to the variable, the caller is then able to update the pixel to a different color, as shown in the highlighted lines of Listing 5.20. Checking for the update via the array shows that the value is now black.

There are two important restrictions on return by reference, both due to object lifetime: (1) Object references shouldn't be garbage collected while they're still referenced, and (2) they shouldn't consume memory when they no longer have any references. To enforce these restrictions, you can only return the following from a reference-returning function:

- References to fields or array elements
- Other reference-returning properties or functions
- References that were passed in as parameters to the by-reference-returning function

For example, `FindFirstRedEyePixel()` returns a reference to an item in the image array, which was a parameter to the function. Similarly, if the image was stored as a field within the class, you could return the field by reference:

```
byte[] _Image;
public ref byte[] Image { get { return ref _Image; } }
```

In addition, `ref` locals are initialized to refer to a particular variable and can't be modified to refer to a different variable.

There are several return-by-reference characteristics of which to be cognizant:

- If you're returning a reference, you obviously must return it. This means, therefore, that in the example in Listing 5.20, even if no red-eye pixel exists, you still need to return a reference byte. The only workaround would be to throw an exception. In contrast, the by-reference parameter approach allows you to leave the parameter unchanged and return a `bool` indicating success. In many cases, this might be preferable.
- When declaring a reference local variable, initialization is required. This involves assigning it a `ref` return from a function or a reference to a variable:

```
ref string text; // Error
```

- Although it's possible in C# 7.0 to declare a reference local variable, declaring a field of type `ref` isn't allowed (see "Instance Fields" (<https://essentialsharp.com/instance-fields>) in Chapter 6 for more information on declaring fields):

```
class Thing { ref string _Text; /* Error */ }
```

- You can't declare a by-reference type for an auto-implemented property (see "Properties" (<https://essentialsharp.com/properties>) in Chapter 6 for more information on declaring auto-properties):

```
class Thing { ref string Text { get;set; } /* Error */ }
```

- Properties that return a reference are allowed (see "Properties" (<https://essentialsharp.com/properties>) in Chapter 6 for more information on declaring properties):

```
class Thing { string _Text = "Inigo Montoya";  
ref string Text { get { return ref _Text; } } }
```

- A reference local variable can't be initialized with a value (such as `null` or a constant). It must be assigned from a by-reference-returning member or a local variable, field, or array element:

```
ref int number = 42; // ERROR
```

Parameter Arrays (params)

In the examples so far, the number of arguments that must be passed has been fixed by the number of parameters declared in the target method declaration. However, sometimes it is convenient if the number of arguments may vary. Consider the `Combine()` method from Listing 5.17. In that method, you passed the drive letter, folder path, and filename. What if the path had more than one folder, and the caller wanted the method to join additional folders to form the full path? Perhaps the best option would be to pass an array of strings for the folders. However, this would make

the calling code a little more complex, because it would be necessary to construct an array to pass as an argument.

To make it easier on the callers of such a method, C# provides a keyword that enables the number of arguments to vary in the calling code instead of being set by the target method. Before we discuss the method declaration, observe the calling code declared within `Main()`, as shown in Listing 5.21 with Output 5.7.

LISTING 5.21: Passing a Variable Parameter List

```

using System;
using System.IO;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string fullName;

        // ...

        // Call Combine() with four parameters
        fullName = Combine(
            Directory.GetCurrentDirectory(),
            "bin", "config", "index.html");
        Console.WriteLine(fullName);

        // ...

        // Call Combine() with only three parameters
        fullName = Combine(
            Environment.SystemDirectory,
            "Temp", "index.html");
        Console.WriteLine(fullName);

        // ...

        // Call Combine() with an array
        fullName = Combine(
            new string[] {
                $"{Environment.GetFolderPath(Environment.SpecialFolder.
↳UserProfile)}", "Documents",
                "Web", "index.html" });
        Console.WriteLine(fullName);
        // ...
    }
}

```

```

static string Combine(params string[] paths)
{
    string result = string.Empty;
    foreach(string path in paths)
    {
        result = Path.Combine(result, path);
    }
    return result;
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.7

```

C:\Users\Inigo\src\Chapter05.Tests\bin\Debug\net7.0\index.html
C:\WINDOWS\system32\Temp\index.html
C:\Users\Inigo\index.html

```

In the first call to `Combine()`, four arguments are specified. The second call contains only three arguments. In the final call, a single argument is passed using an array. In other words, the `Combine()` method takes a variable number of arguments—presented either as any number of string arguments separated by commas or as a single array of strings. The former syntax is called the *expanded* form of the method call, and the latter form is called the *normal* form.

To allow invocation using either form, the `Combine()` method does the following:

1. Places `params` immediately before the last parameter in the method declaration
2. Declares the last parameter as an array

With a **parameter array** declaration, it is possible to access each corresponding argument as a member of the `params` array. In the `Combine()` method implementation, you iterate over the elements of the `paths` array and call `System.IO.Path.Combine()`. This method automatically combines the parts of the path, appropriately using the platform-specific directory separator character. Note that `PathEx.Combine()` is for demonstration only as it provides a rough implementation of what `System.IO.Path.Combine()` does already.

There are a few notable characteristics of the parameter array:

- The parameter array is not necessarily the only parameter on a method.
- The parameter array must be the last parameter in the method declaration. Since only the last parameter may be a parameter array, a method cannot have more than one parameter array.
- The caller can specify zero arguments that correspond to the parameter array parameter, which will result in an array of zero items being passed as the parameter array.
- Parameter arrays are type-safe: The arguments given must be compatible with the element type of the parameter array.
- The caller can use an explicit array rather than a comma-separated list of arguments.
- If the target method implementation requires a minimum number of parameters, those parameters should appear explicitly within the method declaration, forcing a compile error instead of relying on runtime error handling if required parameters are missing. For example, if you have a method that requires one or more integer arguments, declare the method as `int Max(int first, params int[] operands)` rather than as `int Max(params int[] operands)` so that at least one value is passed to `Max()`.

Using a parameter array, you can pass a variable number of arguments of the same type into a method. The section “Method Overloading,” which appears later in this chapter, discusses a means of supporting a variable number of arguments that are not necessarily of the same type.

Guidelines

DO use parameter arrays when a method can handle any number—including zero—of additional arguments.

By the way, a path `Combine()` function is a contrived example since, in fact, `System.IO.Path.Combine()` is an existing function that is overloaded to support parameter arrays.

Recursion

Calling a method **recursively** or implementing the method using **recursion** refers to use of a method that calls itself. Recursion is sometimes the simplest way to implement a particular algorithm. Listing 5.22 counts the lines of all the C# source files (*.cs) in a directory and its subdirectory.

LISTING 5.22: Counting the Lines within *.cs Files, Given a Directory

```
using System.IO;

public static class LineCounter
{
    // Use the first argument as the directory
    // to search, or default to the current directory
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount = 0;
        string directory;
        if(args.Length > 0)
        {
            directory = args[0];
        }
        else
        {
            directory = Directory.GetCurrentDirectory();
        }
        totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines(directory);
        Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
    }

    static int DirectoryCountLines(string directory)
    {
        int lineCount = 0;
        foreach(string file in
            Directory.GetFiles(directory, "*.cs"))
        {
            lineCount += CountLines(file);
        }

        foreach(string subdirectory in
            Directory.GetDirectories(directory))
        {
            lineCount += DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);
        }
    }
}
```



```

        return lineCount;
    }

    private static int CountLines(string file)
    {
        string? line;
        int lineCount = 0;
        // This can be improved with a using statement
        // which is not yet described.
        FileStream stream = new(file, FileMode.Open);
        StreamReader reader = new(stream);
        line = reader.ReadLine();

        while(line != null)
        {
            if(line.Trim() != "")
            {
                lineCount++;
            }
            line = reader.ReadLine();
        }

        reader.Dispose(); // Automatically closes the stream
        return lineCount;
    }
}

```

Output 5.8 shows the results of Listing 5.22.

OUTPUT 5.8

```
104
```

The program begins by passing the first command-line argument to `DirectoryCountLines()` or by using the current directory if no argument is provided. This method first iterates through all the files in the current directory and totals the source code lines for each file. After processing each file in the directory, the code processes each subdirectory by passing the subdirectory back into the `DirectoryCountLines()` method, rerunning the method using the subdirectory. The same process is repeated recursively through each subdirectory until no more directories remain to process.

Readers unfamiliar with recursion may find it confusing at first. Regardless, it is often the simplest pattern to code, especially with hierarchical type data such as the filesystem. However, although it may be the most readable approach, it is generally not the fastest implementation. If performance becomes an issue, developers should seek an alternative solution to a recursive implementation. The choice generally hinges on balancing readability with performance.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

Infinite Recursion Error

A common programming error in recursive method implementations appears in the form of a stack overflow during program execution. This usually happens because of **infinite recursion**, in which the method continually calls back on itself, never reaching a point that triggers the end of the recursion. It is a good practice for programmers to review any method that uses recursion and to verify that the recursion calls are finite.

A common pattern for recursion using pseudocode is as follows:

```
M(x)
{
  if x is trivial
  return the result
  else
  a. Do some work to make the problem smaller
  b. Recursively call M to solve the smaller problem
  c. Compute the result based on a and b
  return the result
}
```

Things go wrong when this pattern is not followed. For example, if you don't make the problem smaller or if you don't handle all possible "smallest" cases, the recursion never terminates.

Method Overloading

Listing 5.22 called `DirectoryCountLines()`, which counted the lines of `*.cs` files. However, if you want to count code in `*.h/*.cpp` files or in `*.vb` files, `DirectoryCountLines()` will not work. Instead, you need a method that takes the file extension but still keeps the existing method definition so that it handles `*.cs` files by default.

All methods within a class must have a unique signature, and C# defines uniqueness by variation in the method name, parameter data types, or number of parameters. This does not include method return data types; defining two methods that differ only in their return data types will cause a compile error. This is true even if the return type is two different tuples. **Method overloading** occurs when a class has two or more methods with the same name and the parameter count and/or data types vary between the overloaded methods.

NOTE

A method is considered unique as long as there is variation in the method name, parameter data types, or number of parameters.

Method overloading is a type of **operational polymorphism**. Polymorphism occurs when the same logical operation takes on many (“poly”) forms (“morphs”) because the data varies. For example, calling `WriteLine()` and passing a format string along with some parameters is implemented differently than calling `WriteLine()` and specifying an integer. However, logically, to the caller, the method takes care of writing the data, and it is somewhat irrelevant how the internal implementation occurs. Listing 5.23 provides an example, and Output 5.9 shows the results.

LISTING 5.23: Counting the Lines within *.cs Files Using Overloading

```
public static class LineCounter
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount;
```

```

    if(args.Length > 1)
    {
        totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines(args[0], args[1]);
    }
    else if(args.Length > 0)
    {
        totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines(args[0]);
    }
    else
    {
        totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines();
    }

    Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
}

static int DirectoryCountLines()
{
    return DirectoryCountLines(
        Directory.GetCurrentDirectory());
}

static int DirectoryCountLines(string directory)
{
    return DirectoryCountLines(directory, "*.cs");
}

static int DirectoryCountLines(
    string directory, string extension)
{
    int lineCount = 0;
    foreach(string file in
        Directory.GetFiles(directory, extension))
    {
        lineCount += CountLines(file);
    }

    foreach(string subdirectory in
        Directory.GetDirectories(directory))
    {
        lineCount += DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);
    }

    return lineCount;
}

```

```

private static int CountLines(string file)
{
    int lineCount = 0;
    string? line;
    // This can be improved with a using statement
    // which is not yet described.
    FileStream stream = new(file, FileMode.Open);
    StreamReader reader = new(stream);
    line = reader.ReadLine();
    while(line is not null)
    {
        if(line.Trim() != "")
        {
            lineCount++;
        }
        line = reader.ReadLine();
    }

    reader.Dispose(); // Automatically closes the stream
    return lineCount;
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.9

```

>LineCounter.exe .\ *.cs
28

```

The effect of method overloading is to provide optional ways to call the method. As demonstrated inside `Main()`, you can call the `DirectoryCountLines()` method with or without passing the directory to search and the file extension.

Notice that the parameterless implementation of `DirectoryCountLines()` was changed to call the single-parameter version, `int DirectoryCountLines(string directory)`. This is a common pattern when implementing overloaded methods. The idea is that developers implement only the core logic in one method, and all the other overloaded methods will call that single method. If the core implementation changes, it needs to be modified in only one location rather than within each implementation. This pattern is especially prevalent when using method overloading to enable optional parameters that do not have values determined at compile time, so they cannot be specified using optional parameters.

NOTE

Placing the core functionality into a single method that all other overloading methods invoke means that you can make changes in implementation in just the core method, which the other methods will automatically take advantage of.

Optional Parameters

The C# language designers also added support for **optional parameters**.⁷ By allowing the association of a parameter with a constant value as part of the method declaration, it is possible to call a method without passing an argument for every parameter of the method (see Listing 5.24).

LISTING 5.24: Methods with Optional Parameters

```
public static class LineCounter
{
    public static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        int totalLineCount;

        if(args.Length > 1)
        {
            totalLineCount =
                DirectoryCountLines(args[0], args[1]);
        }
        else if(args.Length > 0)
        {
            totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines(args[0]);
        }
        else
        {
            totalLineCount = DirectoryCountLines();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(totalLineCount);
    }
}
```

7. Introduced in C# 4.0.

```

static int DirectoryCountLines()
{
    // ...
}

/*
    static int DirectoryCountLines(string directory)
    { ... }
*/

static int DirectoryCountLines(
    string directory, string extension = "*.cs")
{
    int lineCount = 0;
    foreach(string file in
        Directory.GetFiles(directory, extension))
    {
        lineCount += CountLines(file);
    }

    foreach(string subdirectory in
        Directory.GetDirectories(directory))
    {
        lineCount += DirectoryCountLines(subdirectory);
    }

    return lineCount;
}

private static int CountLines(string file)
{
    // ...
}
}

```

In Listing 5.24, the `DirectoryCountLines()` method declaration with a single parameter has been removed (commented out), but the call from `Main()` (specifying one parameter) remains. When no `extension` parameter is specified in the call, the value assigned to `extension` within the declaration (`*.cs` in this case) is used. This allows the calling code to not specify a value if desired, and it eliminates the additional overload that would otherwise be required. Note that optional parameters must appear after all required parameters (those that don't have

default values). Also, the fact that the default value needs to be a constant, compile-time-resolved value is fairly restrictive. You cannot, for example, declare a method like

```
DirectoryCountLines(
    string directory = Environment.CurrentDirectory,
    string extension = "*.cs")
```

because `Environment.CurrentDirectory` is not a constant. In contrast, because `"*.cs"` is a constant, C# does allow it for the default value of an optional parameter.

Guidelines

DO provide good defaults for all parameters where possible.

DO provide simple method overloads that have a small number of required parameters.

CONSIDER organizing overloads from the simplest to the most complex.

A second method call feature is the use of **named arguments**.⁸ With named arguments, it is possible for the caller to explicitly identify the name of the parameter to be assigned a value, rather than relying solely on parameter and argument order to correlate them (see Listing 5.25).

LISTING 5.25: Specifying Parameters by Name

```
public static void Main()
{
    DisplayGreeting(
        firstName: "Inigo", lastName: "Montoya");
}

public static void DisplayGreeting(
    string firstName,
    string? middleName = null,
    string? lastName = null
)
```

8. Introduced in C# 4.0.


```
{  
    // ...  
}
```

In Listing 5.25, the call to `DisplayGreeting()` from within `Main()` assigns a value to a parameter by name. Of the two optional parameters (`middleName` and `lastName`), only `lastName` is given as an argument. For cases where a method has lots of parameters and many of them are optional,⁹ using the named argument syntax is certainly a convenience. However, along with the convenience comes an impact on the flexibility of the method interface. In the past, parameter names could be changed without causing C# code that invokes the method to no longer compile. With the addition of named parameters, the parameter name becomes part of the interface because changing the name would cause code that uses the named parameter to no longer compile.

Guidelines

DO treat parameter names as part of the API, and avoid changing the names if version compatibility between APIs is important.

For many experienced C# developers, this is a surprising restriction. However, the restriction has been imposed as part of the Common Language Specification ever since .NET 1.0. Moreover, Visual Basic has always supported calling methods with named arguments. Therefore, library developers should already be following the practice of not changing parameter names to successfully interoperate with other .NET languages from version to version. In essence, named arguments now impose the same restriction on changing parameter names that many other .NET languages already require.

Given the combination of method overloading, optional parameters, and named parameters, resolving which method to call becomes less obvious. A call is **applicable** (compatible) with a method if all parameters have exactly one

9. A common occurrence when accessing Microsoft COM libraries such as Microsoft Word or Microsoft Excel.

corresponding argument (either by name or by position) that is type-compatible, unless the parameter is optional (or is a parameter array). Although this restricts the possible number of methods that will be called, it doesn't identify a unique method. To further distinguish which specific method will be called, the compiler uses only explicitly identified parameters in the caller, ignoring all optional parameters that were not specified at the caller. Therefore, if two methods are applicable because one of them has an optional parameter, the compiler will resolve to the method without the optional parameter.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

Method Resolution

When the compiler must choose which of several applicable methods is the best one for a particular call, the one with the *most specific* parameter types is chosen. Assuming there are two applicable methods, each requiring an implicit conversion from an argument to a parameter type, the method whose parameter type is the more derived type will be used.

For example, a method that takes a `double` parameter is chosen over a method that takes an `object` parameter if the caller passes an argument of type `int`. This is because `double` is more specific than `object`. There are objects that are not doubles, but there are no doubles that are not objects, so `double` must be more specific.

If more than one method is applicable and no unique best method can be determined, the compiler issues an error indicating that the call is ambiguous.

For example, given the following methods

```
static void Method(object thing){}
static void Method(double thing){}
static void Method(long thing){}
static void Method(int thing){}
```

a call of the form `Method(42)` resolves as `Method(int thing)` because that is an exact match from the argument type to the parameter type. Were that method to be removed, overload resolution would choose the `long` version, because `long` is more specific than either `double` or `object`.

The C# specification includes additional rules governing implicit conversion between `byte`, `ushort`, `uint`, `ulong`, and the other numeric types. In general, though, it is better to use a cast to make the intended target method more recognizable.

Basic Error Handling with Exceptions

This section examines how to handle error reporting via a mechanism known as **exception handling**. With exception handling, a method can pass information about an error to a calling method without using a return value or explicitly providing any parameters to do so. Listing 5.26 with Output 5.10 contains a slight modification to Listing 1.16—the `HeyYou` program from Chapter 1. Instead of requesting the last name of the user, it prompts for the user’s age.

LISTING 5.26: Converting a string to an int

```
public static void Main()
{
    string? firstName;
    string ageText;
    int age;

    Console.WriteLine("Hey you!");

    Console.Write("Enter your first name: ");
    firstName = Console.ReadLine();

    Console.Write("Enter your age: ");
    // Assume not null for clarity
    ageText = Console.ReadLine();
    age = int.Parse(ageText);

    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hi { firstName }! You are { age * 12 } months old.");
}
```

OUTPUT 5.10

```
Hey you!
Enter your first name: Inigo
```

```
Enter your age: 42
Hi Inigo! You are 504 months old.
```

The return value from `System.Console.ReadLine()` is stored in a variable called `ageText` and is then passed to a method with the `int` data type, called `Parse()`. This method is responsible for taking a string value that represents a number and converting it to an `int` type.

■ BEGINNER TOPIC

42 as a String versus 42 as an Integer

C# requires that every non-null value have a well-defined type associated with it. Therefore, not only the data value but also the type associated with the data is important. A string value of “42”, therefore, is distinctly different from an integer value of 42. The string is composed of the two characters 4 and 2, whereas the `int` is the number 42.

Given the converted string, the final `System.Console.WriteLine()` statement will print the age in months by multiplying the age value by 12.

But what happens if the user does not enter a valid integer string? For example, what happens if the user enters “forty-two”? The `Parse()` method cannot handle such a conversion. It expects the user to enter a string that contains only numerical digits. If the `Parse()` method is sent an invalid value, it needs some way to report this fact back to the caller.

Trapping Errors

To indicate to the calling method that the parameter is invalid, `int.Parse()` will **throw an exception**. Throwing an exception halts further execution in the current control flow and jumps into the first code block within the call stack that handles the exception.

Since you have not yet provided any such handling, the program reports the exception to the user as an **unhandled exception**. Assuming there is no registered debugger on the system, console applications will display the error on the console with a message such as that shown in Output 5.11.

OUTPUT 5.11

```
Hey you!  
Enter your first name: Inigo  
Enter your age: forty-two  
  
Unhandled Exception: System.FormatException: Input string was  
    not in a correct format.  
    at System.Number.ThrowOverflowOrFormatException(...)  
    at System.Number.ParseInt32(String s)  
    at ...ExceptionHandling.Main()
```

Obviously, such an error is not particularly helpful. To fix this, it is necessary to provide a mechanism that handles the error, perhaps reporting a more meaningful error message back to the user.

This process is known as **catching an exception**. The syntax is demonstrated in Listing 5.27, and the output appears in Output 5.12.

LISTING 5.27: Catching an Exception

```
public class ExceptionHandling  
{  
    public static int Main(string[] args)  
    {  
        string? firstName;  
        string ageText;  
        int age;  
        int result = 0;  
  
        Console.WriteLine("Enter your first name: ");  
        firstName = Console.ReadLine();  
  
        Console.WriteLine("Enter your age: ");  
        // Assume not null for clarity  
        ageText = Console.ReadLine()!;  
  
        try  
        {  
            age = int.Parse(ageText);  
            Console.WriteLine(  

```

```

        $"Hi { firstName }! You are { age * 12 } months old.");
    }
    catch(FormatException)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"The age entered, { ageText }, is not valid.");
        result = 1;
    }
    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Unexpected error: { exception.Message }");
        result = 1;
    }
    finally
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye { firstName }");
    }

    return result;
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.12

```

Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your age: forty-two
The age entered, forty-two, is not valid.
Goodbye Inigo

```

To begin, surround the code that could potentially throw an exception (`age = int.Parse()`) with a **try block**. This block begins with the `try` keyword. It indicates to the compiler that the developer is aware of the possibility that the code within the block might throw an exception, and if it does, one of the **catch blocks** will attempt to handle the exception.

One or more `catch` blocks (or the `finally` block) must appear immediately following a `try` block. The `catch` block header (see “Advanced Topic: General Catch” later in this chapter) optionally allows you to specify the data type of the exception. As long as the data type matches the exception type, the `catch` block will execute. If, however, there is no appropriate `catch` block, the exception will fall through and go

unhandled as though there were no exception handling. The resultant control flow appears in Figure 5.1.

For example, assume the user enters “forty-two” for the age in the previous example. In this case, `int.Parse()` will throw an exception of type `System.FormatException`, and control will jump to the set of catch blocks. (`System.FormatException` indicates that the string was not of the correct format to be parsed appropriately.) Since the first catch block matches the type of exception that `int.Parse()` threw, the code inside this block will execute. If a statement within the try block threw a different exception, the second catch block would execute because all exceptions are of type `System.Exception`.

If there were no `System.FormatException` catch block, the `System.Exception` catch block would execute even though `int.Parse` throws a `System.FormatException`. This is because a `System.FormatException` is also of type `System.Exception`. (`System.FormatException` is a more specific implementation of the generic exception, `System.Exception`.)

The order in which you handle exceptions is significant. Catch blocks must appear from most specific to least specific. The `System.Exception` data type is least specific, so it appears last. `System.FormatException` appears first because it is the most specific exception that Listing 5.27 handles.

Regardless of whether control leaves the try block normally or because the code in the try block throws an exception, the **finally block** of code executes after control leaves the try-protected region. The purpose of the finally block is to provide a location to place code that will execute regardless of how the try/catch blocks exit—with or without an exception. Finally blocks are useful for cleaning up resources, regardless of whether an exception is thrown. In fact, it is possible to have a try block with a finally block and no catch block. The finally block executes regardless of whether the try block throws an exception or whether a catch block is even written to handle the exception. Listing 5.28 demonstrates the try/finally block, and Output 5.13 shows the results.

LISTING 5.28: Finally Block without a Catch Block

```
using System;

public class ExceptionHandling
```

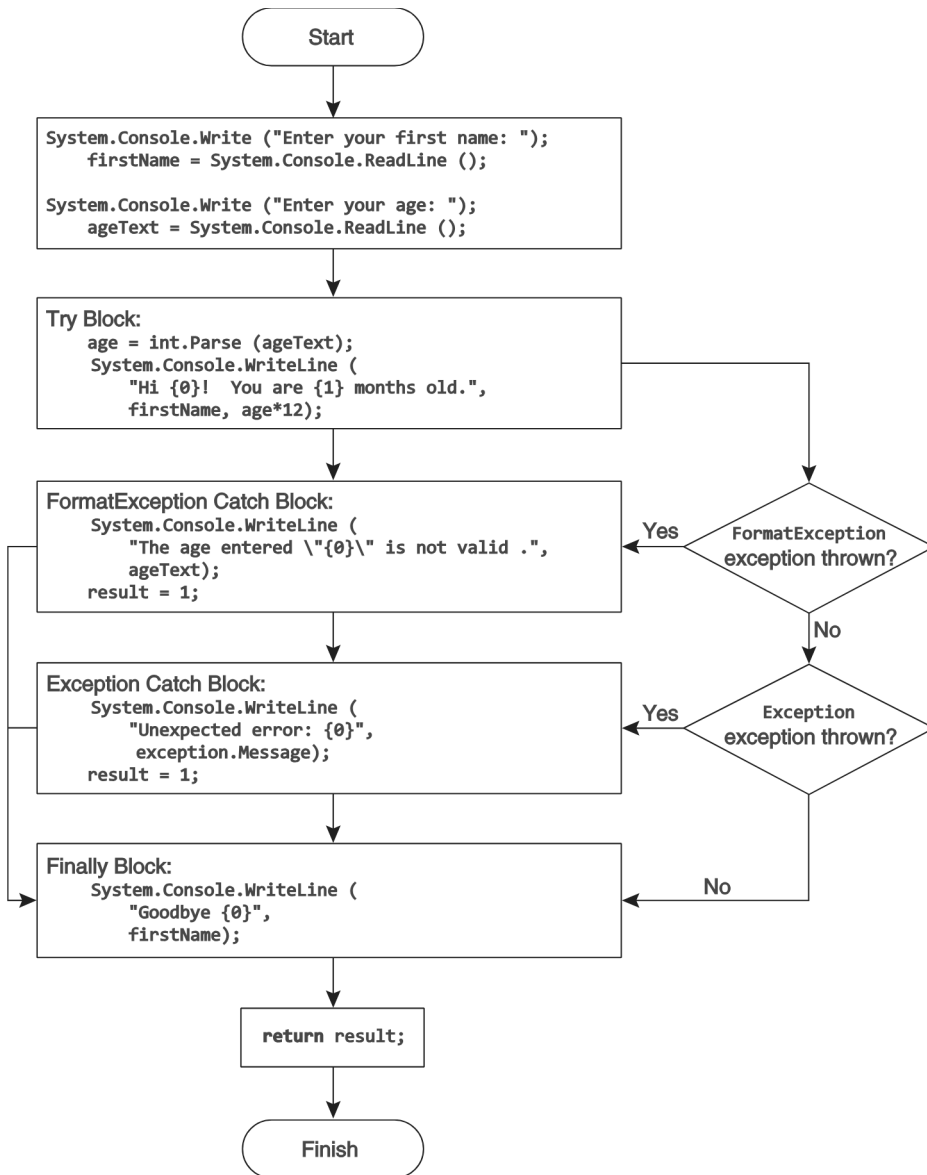


FIGURE 5.1: Exception-handling control flow

```

{
public static int Main()
{

```



```

string? firstName;
string ageText;
int age;
int result = 0;

Console.WriteLine("Enter your first name: ");
firstName = Console.ReadLine();

Console.WriteLine("Enter your age: ");
// Assume not null for clarity
ageText = Console.ReadLine(!);

try
{
    age = int.Parse(ageText);
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hi { firstName }! You are { age * 12 } months old.");
}
finally
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye { firstName }");
}

return result;
}
}

```

OUTPUT 5.13

```

Enter your first name: Inigo
Enter your age: forty-two

Unhandled Exception: System.FormatException: Input string was
    not in a correct format.
    at System.Number.ThrowOverflowOrFormatException(...)
    at System.Number.ParseInt32(String s)
    at ...ExceptionHandling.Main()
Goodbye Inigo

```

The attentive reader will have noticed something interesting here: The runtime first reported the unhandled exception and then ran the finally block. What explains this unusual behavior?

First, the behavior is legal because when an exception is unhandled, the behavior of the runtime is implementation defined—any behavior is legal! The runtime

chooses this particular behavior because it knows before it chooses to run the finally block that the exception will be unhandled; the runtime has already examined all of the activation frames on the call stack and determined that none of them is associated with a catch block that matches the thrown exception.

As soon as the runtime determines that the exception will be unhandled, it checks whether a debugger is installed on the machine, because you might be the software developer who is analyzing this failure. If a debugger is present, it offers the user the chance to attach the debugger to the process *before* the finally block runs. If there is no debugger installed or if the user declines to debug the problem, the default behavior is to print the unhandled exception to the console and then see if there are any finally blocks that could run. Due to the “implementation-defined” nature of the situation, the runtime is not required to run finally blocks in this situation; an implementation may choose to do so or not.

■ NOTE

If an exception goes unhandled before the process exits, the order of execution of the finally block, and whether it even executes, is implementation defined.

■ Guidelines

AVOID explicitly throwing exceptions from finally blocks. (Implicitly thrown exceptions resulting from method calls are acceptable.)

DO favor try/finally and avoid using try/catch for cleanup code.

DO throw exceptions that describe which exceptional circumstance occurred and, if possible, how to prevent it.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

Exception Class Inheritance

All objects thrown as exceptions derive from `System.Exception`. (Objects thrown from other languages that do not derive from `System.Exception` are automatically “wrapped” by an object that does.) Therefore, they can be handled by the `catch(System.Exception exception)` block. It is preferable, however, to include a catch block that is specific to the most derived type (e.g., `System.FormatException`), because then it is possible to get the most information about an exception and handle it less generically. In so doing, the catch statement that uses the most derived type can handle the exception type specifically, accessing data related to the exception thrown and avoiding conditional logic to determine what type of exception occurred.

Therefore, C# enforces the rule that catch blocks appear from most derived to least derived. For example, a catch statement that catches `System.Exception` cannot appear before a statement that catches `System.FormatException` because `System.FormatException` derives from `System.Exception`.

A method could throw many exception types. Table 5.2 lists some of the more common ones within the framework.

TABLE 5.2: Common Exception Types

Exception Type	Description
<code>System.Exception</code>	The “base” exception from which all other exceptions derive.
<code>System.ArgumentException</code>	Indicates that one of the arguments passed into the method is invalid.
<code>System.ArgumentNullException</code>	Indicates that a particular argument is null and that this is not a valid value for that parameter.
<code>System.ApplicationException</code>	To be avoided. The original idea was that you might want to have one kind of handling for system exceptions and another for application exceptions, which, although plausible, doesn’t actually work well in the real world.

TABLE 5.2: Common Exception Types (continued)

Exception Type	Description
<code>System.FormatException</code>	Indicates that the string format is not valid for conversion.
<code>System.IndexOutOfRangeException</code>	Indicates that an attempt was made to access an array or other collection element that does not exist.
<code>System.InvalidCastException</code>	Indicates that an attempt to convert from one data type to another was not a valid conversion.
<code>System.InvalidOperationException</code>	Indicates that an unexpected scenario has occurred such that the application is no longer in a valid state of operation.
<code>System.NotImplementedException</code>	Indicates that although the method signature exists, it has not been fully implemented.
<code>System.NullReferenceException</code>	Thrown when code tries to find the object referred to by a reference that is <code>null</code> .
<code>System.ArithmeticException</code>	Indicates an invalid math operation, not including divide by zero.
<code>System.ArrayTypeMismatchException</code>	Occurs when attempting to store an element of the wrong type into an array.
<code>System.StackOverflowException</code>	Indicates an unexpectedly deep recursion.

■ ADVANCED TOPIC

General Catch

It is possible to specify a catch block that takes no parameters, as shown in Listing 5.29.

LISTING 5.29: General Catch Blocks

```
// A previous catch clause already catches all exceptions
#pragma warning disable CS1058
// ...
    try
```

```
{
    age = int.Parse(ageText);
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hi { firstName }! You are { age * 12 } months old.");
}
catch(FormatException exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"The age entered ,{ageText}, is not valid.");
    result = 1;
}
catch(Exception exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Unexpected error: { exception.Message }");
    result = 1;
}
catch
{
    Console.WriteLine("Unexpected error!");
    result = 1;
}
finally
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Goodbye { firstName }");
}
```

A catch block with no data type, called a **general catch block**, is equivalent to specifying a catch block that takes an object data type—for instance, `catch(object exception){...}`. For this reason, a warning is triggered stating that the catch block already exists; hence the `#pragma warning disable` directive.

Because all classes ultimately derive from `object`, a catch block with no data type must appear last.

General catch blocks are rarely used because there is no way to capture any information about the exception. In addition, C# doesn't support the ability to throw an exception of type `object`. (Only libraries written in languages such as C++ allow exceptions of any type.)

Guidelines

AVOID general catch blocks and replace them with a catch of `System.Exception`.

AVOID catching exceptions for which the appropriate action is unknown. It is better to let an exception go unhandled than to handle it incorrectly.

Reporting Errors Using a `throw` Statement

C# allows developers to throw exceptions from their code, as demonstrated in Listing 5.30 and Output 5.14.

LISTING 5.30: Throwing an Exception

```
public static void Main()
{
    try
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Begin executing");
        Console.WriteLine("Throw exception");
        throw new Exception("Arbitrary exception");
        // Catch 1
        Console.WriteLine("End executing");
    }
    catch(FormatException exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "A FormatException was thrown");
    }
    // Catch 1
    catch(Exception exception)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Unexpected error: { exception.Message }");
        // Jump to Post Catch
    }

    // Post Catch
    Console.WriteLine(
        "Shutting down...");
}

```

OUTPUT 5.14

```

Begin executing
Throw exception...
Unexpected error: Arbitrary exception
Shutting down...

```

As the comments in Listing 5.30 depict, throwing an exception causes execution to jump from where the exception is thrown into the first compatible catch block (Catch 1).¹⁰ In this case, the second catch block handles the exception and writes out an error message. In Listing 5.30, there is no finally block, so following the `WriteLine()` method of Catch 1, execution falls through to the `Console.WriteLine()` statement following the try/catch block (after the Post Catch comment).

To throw an exception, it is necessary to have an instance of an exception. Listing 5.30 creates an instance using the keyword `new` followed by the type of the exception. Most exception types allow a message to be specified for the exception's construction parameter, so that when the exception occurs, the message can be retrieved.

Sometimes a catch block will trap an exception but be unable to handle it appropriately or fully. In these circumstances, a catch block can rethrow the exception using the `throw` statement without specifying any exception, as shown in Listing 5.31.

LISTING 5.31: Rethrowing an Exception

```

// ...
catch (Exception exception)
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        "Rethrowing unexpected error: "
        + $"{ exception.Message }");

    throw;
}
// ...

```

10. Technically, it could be caught by a compatible exception filter as well.

In Listing 5.31, the `throw` statement is “empty” rather than specifying that the exception referred to by the exception variable is to be thrown. This illustrates a subtle difference: `throw;` preserves the *call stack* information in the exception, whereas `throw exception;` replaces that information with the current call stack information. For debugging purposes, it is usually better to know the original call stack. Of course, this is allowed only in a catch statement where the caught exception can be determined.

Guidelines

DO prefer using an empty `throw` when catching and rethrowing an exception, to preserve the call stack.

DO report execution failures by throwing exceptions rather than returning error codes.

DO NOT have public members that return exceptions as return values or an `out` parameter. Throw exceptions to indicate errors; do not use them as return values to indicate errors.

AVOID catching and logging an exception before rethrowing it. Instead, allow the exception to escape until it can be handled appropriately.

Reporting Null Argument Exceptions

When nullability reference types are enabled, the compiler will make a best effort to identify when there is the possibility of a nullable argument passed as a non-nullable argument. If you assign a possible null value to a non-nullable argument, the compiler will issue a warning stating that you are attempting to convert a possible null value to a non-nullable argument. Assuming you address all such warnings appropriately, the compiler will catch most of the cases. However, if the caller is outside of your control (such as from a library you didn’t write), doesn’t turn on nullable reference types, ignores the warnings, or invokes the method from C# 7.0 or earlier, there is nothing preventing a null argument even though the parameter is declared as non-nullable. For this reason, the best practice is to check that any public non-nullable reference types are not null. With .NET 6.0 you can use a conditional `if (is null)` check:


```
if (is null) throw new ArgumentNullException(...)
```

You can accomplish this in a single statement using the null coalescing assignment operator with a `throw ArgumentNullException` expression if the parameter value is null (see Listing 5.32).

LISTING 5.32: Parameter Validation by Throwing `ArgumentNullException`

```
httpsUrl = httpsUrl ??
    throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(httpsUrl));
fileName = fileName ??
    throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(fileName));

// ...
```

With .NET 7.0, you can use the `ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull()` method (see Listing 5.33).

LISTING 5.33: Parameter Validation with `ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull()`

```
ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull(httpsUrl);
ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull(fileName);

// ...
```

Internally, the `ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull()` method also throws the `ArgumentNullException`.

Guidelines

DO verify that non-null reference types parameters are not null and throw an `ArgumentNullException` when they are.

DO use `ArgumentNullException.ThrowIfNull()` to verify values are null in .NET 7.0 or later.

Additional Parameter Validation

There are obviously a myriad of other type constraints that a method may have on its parameters. Perhaps a string argument should not be an empty string, should not be comprised only of whitespace, or must have “HTTPS” as a prefix. Listing 5.34 displays the full `DownloadSSL()` method, demonstrating this validation.

LISTING 5.34: Custom Parameter Validation

```

public class Program
{
    public static int Main(string[] args)
    {
        int result = 0;
        if(args.Length != 2 )
        {
            // Exactly two arguments must be specified; give an error
            Console.WriteLine(
                "ERROR: You must specify the "
                + "URL and the file name");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Usage: Downloader.exe <URL> <TargetFileName>");
            result = 1;
        }
        else
        {
            DownloadSSL(args[0], args[1]);
        }
        return result;
    }
}

private static void DownloadSSL(string httpsUrl, string fileName)
{
    #if !NET7_0_OR_GREATER
        httpsUrl = httpsUrl?.Trim() ??
            throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(httpsUrl));
        fileName = fileName ??
            throw new ArgumentNullException(nameof(fileName));
        if (fileName.Trim().Length == 0)
        {
            throw new ArgumentException(
                $"{nameof(fileName)} cannot be empty or only whitespace");
        }
    #else
        ArgumentException.ThrowIfNullOrEmpty(httpsUrl = httpsUrl?.Trim());
        ArgumentException.ThrowIfNullOrEmpty(fileName = fileName?.Trim());
    #endif
}

```

```

#endif

    if (!httpsUrl.ToUpper().StartsWith("HTTPS"))
    {
        throw new ArgumentException("URL must start with 'HTTPS'.");
    }

    HttpClient client = new();
    byte[] response =
        client.GetByteArrayAsync(httpsUrl).Result;
    client.Dispose();
    File.WriteAllBytes(fileName!, response);
    Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded '{fileName}' from '{httpsUrl}'.");
}
}

```

When using .NET 7.0 or higher, you can rely on the `ArgumentException.ThrowIfNullOrEmpty()` method to check for both null and an empty string. And, if you invoke the `string.Trim()` method when invoking `ThrowIfNullOrEmpty()`, you can throw an exception if the argument content is only whitespace. (Admittedly, the exception message will not indicate whitespace only is invalid.) The equivalent code for .NET 6.0 or earlier is shown in the `else` directive.

If the null, empty, and whitespace validation pass, Listing 5.34 has an `if` statement that checks for the “HTTPS” prefix. If the validation fails, the resulting code throws an `ArgumentException`, with a custom message describing the problem.

Introducing the nameof Operator

When the parameter fails validation, it is necessary to throw an exception—generally of type `ArgumentException()` or `ArgumentNullException()`. Both exceptions take an argument of type `string` called `paramName` that identifies the name of the parameter that is invalid. In Listing 5.33, we use the `nameof` operator¹¹ for this argument. The `nameof` operator takes an identifier, like the `httpsUrl` variable, and returns a string representation of that name—in this case, “`httpsUrl`”.

11. Introduced in C# 6.0.

The advantage of using the `nameof` operator is that if the identifier name changes, then refactoring tools will automatically change the argument to `nameof` as well. If no refactoring tool is used, the code will no longer compile, forcing the developer to change the argument manually, which is preferable because the former value would presumably be invalid. The result is that `nameof` will even check for spelling errors. The resulting guideline is: **DO** use `nameof` for the `paramName` argument passed into exceptions such as `ArgumentException` and `ArgumentNullException` that take such a parameter. For more information, see Chapter 18.

Guidelines

DO use `nameof(value)` (which resolves to "value") for the `paramName` argument when creating `ArgumentException()` or `ArgumentNullException()` type exceptions. (value is the implicit name of the parameter on property setters.)

Avoid Using Exception Handling to Deal with Expected Situations

Developers should avoid throwing exceptions for expected conditions or normal control flow. For example, developers should not expect users to enter valid text when specifying their age.¹² Therefore, instead of relying on an exception to validate data entered by the user, developers should provide a means of checking the data before attempting the conversion. (Better yet, they should prevent the user from entering invalid data in the first place.) Exceptions are designed specifically for tracking exceptional, unexpected, and potentially fatal situations. Using them for an unintended purpose such as expected situations will cause your code to be hard to read, understand, and maintain.

Consider, for example, the `int.Parse()` method we used in Chapter 2 to convert a string to an integer. In this scenario, the code converted user input that was expected to not always be a number. One of the problems with the `Parse()` method

12. In general, developers should expect their users to perform unexpected actions; in turn, they should code defensively to handle “stupid user tricks.”

is that the only way to determine whether the conversion will be successful is to attempt the cast and then catch the exception if it doesn't work. Because throwing an exception is a relatively expensive operation, it is better to attempt the conversion without exception handling. Toward this effort, it is preferable to use one of the `TryParse()` methods, such as `int.TryParse()`. It requires the use of the `out` keyword because the return from the `TryParse()` function is a `bool` rather than the converted value. Listing 5.35 is a code snippet that demonstrates the conversion using `int.TryParse()`.

LISTING 5.35: Conversion Using `int.TryParse()`

```
if (int.TryParse(ageText, out int age))
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"Hi { firstName }! " +
        $"You are { age * 12 } months old.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine(
        $"The age entered, { ageText }, is not valid.");
}
```

With the `TryParse()` method, it is no longer necessary to include a `try/catch` block simply for the purpose of handling the string-to-numeric conversion.

Another factor in favor of avoiding exceptions for expected scenarios is performance. Like most languages, C# incurs a slight performance hit when throwing an exception—taking microseconds compared to the nanoseconds most operations take. This delay is generally not noticeable in human time—except when the exception goes unhandled. For example, when Listing 5.26 is executed and the user enters an invalid age, the exception is unhandled and there is a noticeable delay while the runtime searches the environment to see whether there is a debugger to load. Fortunately, slow performance when a program is shutting down isn't generally a factor to be concerned with.

Guidelines

DO NOT use exceptions for handling normal, expected conditions; use them for exceptional, unexpected conditions.

Summary

This chapter discussed the details of declaring and calling methods, including the use of the keywords `out` and `ref` to pass and return variables rather than via return values. In addition to method declaration, this chapter introduced exception handling.

A method is a fundamental construct that is a key to writing readable code. Instead of writing large methods with lots of statements, you should use methods to create “paragraphs” of roughly 10 or fewer statements within your code. The process of breaking large functions into smaller pieces is one of the ways you can refactor your code to make it more readable and maintainable.

The next chapter considers the class construct and describes how it encapsulates methods (behavior) and fields (data) into a single unit.

This page intentionally left blank

Index

Symbols

- . (periods)
 - fully qualified method names, 17-18, 50-53, 228
 - nested namespaces, 221, 234-235, 567-570
 - null-conditional operator, 98-99, 173-178, 434
- ! (exclamation points), 65-67, 143, 809-811
- " (double quotes)
 - escape sequence, 65-68, 71-74
 - strings, 65-73, 143
- # (hash symbols)
 - preprocessor directives, 207-214
- #define directive, 207-214, 237-240
- #elif directive, 207-214, 237-239
- #else directive, 34, 207-214, 239
- #endif directive, 207-214, 239, 573
- #endregion directive, 207, 211-214, 236-239
- #error directive, 34, 207-214, 239
- #if directive, 207-214, 239, 898
- #line directive, 207-214, 239, 573
- #nullable directive, 83, 101-102, 214
- #pragma directive, 207-214, 237-239
- #region directive, 207-214, 237-239
- #undef directive, 207-214, 237-239
- #warning directive, 207-214, 239, 304
- \$ (dollar signs)
 - string interpolation, 67, 70-73, 77
- % (percent signs)
 - compound assignment, 27, 139-142, 149
 - overriding, 59-61, 77, 139
 - precedence, 139-142, 216, 427
 - remainder operation, 55, 138-140, 183-185
- & (ampersands), 65-67, 143, 184-185
- ' (single quotes)
 - characters, 64-73
 - escape sequence, 65, 66-73
- () (parentheses), 16, 141-142, 427
- * (asterisks), 59, 65-66, 955
- + (plus signs), 59, 138-139, 142-143
- , (commas), 103-106, 115-116, 193
- (minus signs), 138-139, 148-150, 182-183
- / (forward slashes), 59, 65-73, 573
- : (colons), 106, 193, 344
- ;(semicolons)
 - ending statements, 13, 23, 192-193
 - for loops, 13, 23, 192-193
 - preprocessor directives, 13, 23, 207-210
- < (less than signs), 138-139, 167-169, 426
- <> (angle brackets)
 - generics, 623, 630, 635
 - XML, 35-37, 168-170, 572-573
- = (equals signs), 63, 167-170, 548
- > (greater than signs), 138-139, 167-170, 698
- ? (question marks)
 - command-line option, 269, 437, 896

- conditional operators, 98, 166-171, 175
 - null-coalescing operator, 82, 97-98, 173-178
 - null-conditional operators, 82, 97-98, 173-178
 - @ (at signs)
 - identifiers, 16-19, 53, 65-67
 - verbatim strings, 65-73
 - [] (square brackets)
 - arrays, 115-116, 120-123, 132
 - attributes, 115-116, 881, 896-897
 - indexers, 122, 126-127, 857-861
 - null-conditional operators, 82, 98, 173-178
 - \ (backslashes)
 - escape sequences, 65, 66-74
 - as literals, 65-66, 67-73
 - \a escape sequence, 65-68, 71-73, 160-161
 - \b escape sequence, 65-73, 161
 - \f escape sequence, 65-73, 77
 - \n
 - escape sequence, 65-73
 - new lines, 70-72, 78, 160-161
 - \t escape sequence, 65-73, 160-161
 - \u escape sequence, 64, 65-73
 - \x escape sequence, 64, 65-73
 - ^ (carets), 16, 65-67, 168-170
 - _ (underscores), 17-19, 59, 323
 - { } (curly braces), 24, 70-71, 162-163
 - ~ (tildes)
 - complement operator, 143, 168-170, 187
 - finalizers, 581-584, 589-590, 596
 - list searches, 815, 820-822, 843
 - overriding, 65-67, 237, 241
- A**
- abstract modifier
 - interface refactoring, 444-446, 453-455, 484
 - limitations, 405, 411, 414
 - Access modifiers
 - base class overriding, 393-394, 398, 402
 - classes, 315-316, 330, 566-567
 - derivation, 330, 393-394, 566-567
 - finalizers, 341, 581-582, 583-584
 - getters and setters, 316-317, 326, 330-333
 - type declarations, 330, 547, 565-567
 - Accessing
 - arrays, 120, 123-124, 129-130
 - base members, 306, 391-394, 407
 - instance fields, 303-306, 317, 330
 - properties, 319-320, 326, 330-333
 - referent type members, 901, 921-922, 1097
 - static fields, 360-363, 367, 373
 - Accuracy of floating-point types, 53-58, 92, 145-148
 - Acronyms as identifiers, 17-19, 53, 59
 - Action delegate, 727, 741-747, 753
 - Activation frames, 66, 246, 935
 - Add() method
 - collection initializers, 339, 754-759, 845
 - dictionaries, 758, 832-834, 845-849
 - interlocks, 528, 758, 1057
 - lists, 417, 758, 835-839
 - Addition
 - binary operator, 138-143, 149, 550-552
 - compound assignment, 139-143, 149, 736
 - increment operator, 138-139, 143, 149-153
 - strings, 67-69, 143, 514
 - unary operator, 138-139, 141-143, 149-150
 - Address operator (&), 183-185, 1098, 1102-1103
 - Addresses and pointers, 491-492, 1097-1099, 1102-1103
 - AggregateException type
 - asynchronous requests, 958-960, 1028, 1035
 - parallel loops, 959, 1028, 1035-1039
 - PLINQ queries, 823, 1034-1035, 1038
 - publish-subscribe pattern, 740-743, 753, 959-960
 - tasks, 958-960, 975, 994
 - wrapped exceptions, 622, 959-960, 1035
 - Aggregation for inheritance, 297, 385-386, 463
 - Ahead of time (AOT) compilation, 38-39, 1121, 1127-1128
 - Alerts escape sequence, 65-73, 143, 160

- Aliases
 - command-line option, 241, 269, 896
 - namespaces, 221, 235, 567-570
- Allow Unsafe Code option, 621, 1077, 1093-1095
- AllowMultiple parameter, 259-260, 269-270, 906-909
- AllowNull attribute, 82-83, 348-350, 354
- AllowUnsafeBlocks option, 620-621, 1093, 1094-1095
- Alternative statements for if statements, 158-163, 197, 205
- Ampersands (&)
 - address operator, 143, 149, 184-185
 - bitwise operators, 169-170, 184-187, 552
 - compound assignment, 140-141, 149, 184-185
 - logical operators, 143, 168-170, 184-185
 - overriding, 17, 143, 407
- AND operations
 - bitwise operators, 169, 184-187, 540
 - enums, 534, 540-542, 550
 - logical operators, 143, 167-170, 184-185
- Angle brackets (<>)
 - generics, 623, 630-635, 677
 - XML, 35-37, 571-574, 897
- Anonymous functions, 704-706, 797-800, 803
- Anonymous methods
 - internals, 705, 797-798, 801-803
 - lambda expressions as replacement for, 697-706, 710
 - overview, 705, 797-800, 803
 - parameterless, 704-706, 797, 800-805
- Anonymous types
 - collection initializers, 339, 754-757, 805
 - generating, 705, 797-805
 - local variables, 705, 710, 797-799
 - overview, 705, 754-756, 797-803
 - selecting into, 754-756, 797-805
 - type safety and immutability, 505, 797-805
- Antecedent tasks, 935, 952-957, 975
- Any() operator, 143, 167-169, 800
- APIs (application programming interfaces)
 - documentation, 45, 444-445, 463-464
 - as frameworks, 45, 1110-1113, 1120
 - wrapper calls, 45, 1078, 1086
- AppDomain
 - exceptions, 612-615, 618, 962-964
 - process exits, 590-591, 594-595, 962-964
- AppDomains for unhandled exceptions, 274, 604, 962-964
- Append() method, 260, 462, 758
- AppendFormat() method, 32-33, 75-77, 514
- Applicable calls, 270-271, 417-418, 1078
- ApplicationException type
 - __arglist keyword, 19, 258, 601-603
 - args parameter for Main(), 21-22, 243-245, 258
- ArgumentException type
 - description, 651, 656, 664
 - nameof operator, 289, 603, 894
 - properties, 333, 802, 901-903
 - throwing exceptions, 600-603, 612-614, 622
- ArgumentNullException type
 - description, 603, 654-656, 664
 - properties, 347-350, 603, 802
- ArgumentOutOfRangeException type, 600-603, 612-614, 916
- Arguments
 - generics, 623, 664, 677
 - methods, 220, 224, 269-270
 - named, 224, 269-270, 289
 - passed by value, 224, 269, 488-489
 - passing methods as, 220, 224, 260
- Arithmetic operations, 138-143, 148-151, 184
- Arithmetic operators, 138-143, 149, 167
- ArithmeticException type, 600-605, 622, 916
- Arity
 - generic methods, 642-645, 664, 676-677

- tuples, 108, 642-645, 664
- type parameters, 642-645, 664, 677-678
- Array accessors, 112, 123-130, 320
- Arrays
 - anonymous types, 705, 797-805
 - assigning, 112, 115-120, 123-124
 - collection conversion to, 339, 754-759, 835-837
 - common errors, 114, 124, 132
 - declaring, 112, 115-120, 193
 - foreach loops, 194-195, 760, 1023-1025
 - forward accessing, 112, 120-126, 130
 - instance members, 129-130, 302, 306
 - instantiating and assigning, 116-120, 299, 338-339
 - length, 115-116, 122-125, 129-130
 - methods, 115, 124, 128-130
 - null-conditional operators, 82, 98, 173-178
 - overview, 112-116, 123-126, 856
 - parameters, 115-118, 224, 259-260
 - ranges, 112, 115-116, 124-128
 - redimensioning, 115-120, 123-124, 130-132
 - reverse accessing, 112, 121-127, 130-131
 - strings as, 115-116, 143, 1033
 - unsafe covariance, 669-676, 708
 - working with, 112, 115, 123-124
- ArrayTypeMismatchException type, 124, 675, 1098
- as operator
 - async, 985, 989-991, 1004-1008
 - Main() method, 21-22, 243-246, 258
 - return types, 335, 439, 554
- ASP.NET, 11, 44-47, 1128
- AsParallel() operator, 771-772, 1023-1024, 1031-1039
- AspNetSynchronizationContext type, 944, 1013-1015, 1053-1054
- Assemblies
 - attributes, 881, 897-899, 905-907
 - APIs, 43-45, 898-899, 1122-1123
 - boundaries, 557-559, 898-899, 1122-1123
 - building, 38, 898-899, 1122-1123
 - CIL, 38-44, 1114, 1124
 - CLI, 557-560, 1109, 1121-1123
 - constants, 373, 898-899, 1122-1123
 - extensions, 371, 898-899, 1122-1123
 - references, 557-560, 898-899, 1122-1123
- AssemblyCopyrightAttribute, 897-899, 903-908, 914
- AssemblyFileVersionAttribute, 897-900, 905-908, 914
- AssemblyVersionAttribute, 897-899, 905-908, 912-915
- Assert() method, 147, 462, 916-918
- Assigning
 - arrays, 112, 115-120, 123-124
 - nulls to references, 82-83, 96, 100-101
 - nulls to strings, 82-83, 173, 176
 - pointers, 95-96, 1097-1099, 1102-1103
 - tuples, 106-108, 359, 807
 - variables, 26-27, 106, 116
- Assignment operators
 - associativity, 140-142, 149, 552
 - compound, 139-143, 149, 552
 - delegates, 149, 548, 736
 - null-coalescing, 98, 173-178, 286
 - overriding, 149-151, 548-549, 552
- Associations
 - data with static members, 302, 363, 367
 - with instance fields, 302-307, 363, 372
- Associativity of operators, 138-143, 149, 552
- AsSpan, 463, 856-859, 1084
- Asterisks (*)
 - comments, 34-36, 571-573, 955
 - compound assignment, 140-142, 149, 955
 - indirection operators, 153, 955, 1102-1103
 - multiplication, 138-142, 149, 955
 - overriding, 142, 216, 955
 - pointers, 955, 1096-1103
 - precedence, 140-142, 216, 955
- async
 - Main() method, 21-22, 991, 1003-1005
 - return types, 990-994, 1004-1006, 1019
- async / await support, 985, 989, 1004-1008
- async operator, 989, 1000, 1004

- async return types, 989-995, 1004-1006, 1019
 - async void methods, 975, 1002-1004, 1008
 - Async() method, 994-997, 1000-1005, 1074
 - async/await support, 985, 989, 1004-1008
 - AsyncEnumerable class, 766, 994-1001, 1004-1006
 - Asynchronous invocation, 984-985, 1003-1005, 1012
 - Asynchronous lambdas, 701-706, 1008, 1012
 - Asynchronous methods return types, 990-994, 1002-1006, 1012
 - Asynchronous pattern, 935, 975, 1074
 - Asynchronous tasks
 - complexities from, 944-945, 975, 1012
 - introduction, 935, 944-945, 975
 - task continuation, 951-952, 975, 1074
 - task exceptions, 958-959, 975, 1003-1005
 - thread exceptions, 958, 964, 973-975
 - TPL, 944-945, 973-979, 1025
 - AsyncState property, 994-997, 1000, 1074
 - At signs (@)
 - identifiers, 17-19, 65-68, 139
 - verbatim strings, 65-70, 73, 1103
 - Atomic operations in multithreading, 154, 940-942, 1061
 - AttachedToParent task continuation option, 951-957, 1026, 1031
 - Attributes
 - custom, 881, 897, 900
 - description, 881, 896-900, 906-908
 - enum, 533-534, 542-544, 906-908
 - FlagsAttribute, 543, 905-908, 911
 - initializing, 118, 338-340, 346
 - vs. interfaces, 443-445, 482, 897
 - named parameters, 269-270, 895-897, 909
 - nullable, 82-83, 97, 101-102
 - predefined, 881, 896-897, 900
 - properties, 333, 881, 896-897
 - restricting, 394, 808-811, 897
 - retrieving, 333, 881-883, 897
 - System.ConditionalAttribute, 354, 900, 912-914
 - System.ObsoleteAttribute, 900, 905-908, 914-915
 - AttributeTargets flag, 896-900, 906, 908
 - AttributeUsageAttribute class, 900, 905-908, 914
 - Automatically implemented properties
 - read-only, 322, 374-375, 507
 - reference type, 96, 333, 347
 - structs, 320-322, 333, 510-511
 - working with, 318-322, 333, 474
 - AutoResetEvent event, 746-747, 1003-1005, 1064-1068
 - Average() function, 248, 948, 1001
 - await operator
 - iterating, 760, 806, 863-868
 - task-based asynchronous pattern, 989, 1004, 1074
 - Await() method, 989-993, 1003-1006, 1074
 - AwaitAsync() method, 994-997, 1000-1006, 1074
 - AwaitWithCancellationAsync() method, 966-969, 1003-1005, 1038
- ## B
- Backslashes (\)
 - escape sequence, 64, 65-68, 71-74
 - as literals, 57, 65-66, 67-73
 - Backspace escape sequence, 64, 65-72, 160
 - Base Class Library (BCL)
 - description, 1109, 1113-1114, 1125-1126
 - purpose, 557, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
 - type names, 50, 51-53, 1125-1126
 - Base class overriding
 - constructor invocation, 344-345, 402, 407-410

- members, 398, 407-410, 417-418
- new modifier, 397-398, 402-406, 657
- overview, 402, 407-410, 417
- sealed modifier, 397-398, 402, 405-406
- virtual modifier, 398-402, 405-408, 455
- Base classes
 - derived object conversion to, 386-391, 410, 418
 - inheritance, 295-297, 385-386, 410
 - protected member access in, 393-394, 476, 566
- Base types
 - casting between derived types, 297, 389-391, 402
 - classes, 134, 391, 410
 - description, 134, 391, 410
- BCL (Base Class Library)
 - description, 1109, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
 - purpose, 557-558, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
 - type names, 50, 53, 567-568
- Binary digits (bits), 54-55, 60-61, 182-185
- Binary expression trees, 141, 716-719, 723-725
- Binary operators
 - associativity, 139-142, 149, 552
 - compound assignment, 139-141, 149, 552
 - non-numeric types, 63, 143, 552
 - null-coalescing, 98, 173-178, 286
 - overriding, 167-169, 548, 552
 - overview, 137-138, 167, 184
 - relational and equality, 63, 167-169, 548
- Binary values
 - conversions to, 55, 60-63, 182-185
 - floating-point, 54-56, 145-148, 182-184
 - literals, 57, 61-63, 182-187
 - shift operators, 170, 182-187, 202
- BinaryExpression expression trees, 139-141, 716-720, 723-725
- BinarySearch() method
 - arrays, 128-130, 685-687, 842
 - list searches, 687, 839, 842-848
- BinaryTree<T> class
 - constraints, 646-651, 662, 667
 - index operators, 648-650, 667, 865-866
 - iterators, 865-866, 869, 872-874
 - parameters, 646-651, 667, 872
- Binding
 - dynamic, 920-923, 926-931
 - extension methods, 371-372, 396, 461-463
 - late, 725-727, 920, 931-933
 - metadata, 881-883, 931, 1127
- Bits (binary digits), 54-55, 60-61, 182-187
- Bitwise operators
 - bits and bytes, 61, 170, 182-187
 - complement, 169-170, 183-187, 552
 - compound assignment, 149, 183-187, 552
 - enums, 169, 184-187, 540-542
 - for positions, 119, 183-187, 202
 - shift, 182, 183-187, 202
 - working with, 139, 170, 183-187
- Block statements, 13, 162-164, 702
- BlockingCollection<T> class, 832-834, 1068-1069, 1076
- Boolean (bool) type
 - array initial values, 63, 118-120, 554
 - conversions, 63, 89, 554-555
 - flow control, 137, 166, 169-170
 - lambdas, 166, 554, 703
 - logical operators, 63, 166-170, 184
 - overview, 63, 166, 554
 - relational and equality operators, 63, 167-170, 554
- Boolean expressions for if statements, 158, 166-171, 184
- Boolean operators
 - logical, 63, 167-170, 184-185
 - overriding, 167-170, 184, 552-554
- Bounds
 - arrays, 115-120, 124, 135
 - floating-point types, 53-56, 145-148
- Boxing
 - avoiding, 281, 523-527, 545
 - generics for, 524-527, 677, 681
 - idiosyncrasies, 17, 523-527, 545
 - in loops, 188, 192-194, 524-527
 - overview, 517, 523-527, 545

Brand casing for namespaces, 50-51, 221, 568-570

Break() method

- break statements, 13, 200-201, 875
- lambda expressions, 697-702, 716, 875
- overview, 200-201, 875, 1031-1032
- switch statements, 197-201, 205, 230
- working with, 200-201, 875, 1031-1032
- yield break, 870, 875, 1032

Breaking parallel loops, 1020-1023, 1031-1032, 1035-1039

Brittle base class problem, 391-394, 402, 410

Bubble sorts, 687, 698-700, 710-711

byte type, 53, 64, 96

Bytes, 488-489, 579, 1098-1099

C

C language and C# syntax similarities, 14-15, 48-49, 150

C++ language vs

- arrays, 112, 115-117, 135
- Boolean conversions, 63, 166-169, 554
- buffer overflows, 84-86, 1077, 1120
- delete operator, 139, 150-151, 168
- deterministic destruction, 581, 1077, 1118
- equality checks, 63, 168, 548
- global methods, 218, 232-233, 684
- global variables and functions, 2, 164, 232-233
- header files, 2-3, 14-15, 1114
- implicit overriding, 398, 402-403, 455-457
- increment and decrement operators, 139, 149, 150-154
- local variable scope, 164-165, 233, 714
- Main(), 14, 20-22, 243-245
- methods called during construction, 333, 336, 341
- multiple inheritance, 294-297, 443, 599
- operand evaluation, 63, 137, 141-143
- operator-only statements, 137, 150, 168
- pointer declarations, 1077, 1098-1099, 1102-1103

- preprocessor directives, 207-214
- pure virtual functions, 401-403, 441-443, 599
- short type, 53, 84-85, 1125
- string concatenation, 32, 67-69, 143
- structs, 217, 487, 1083
- switch statements, 197-200, 422-423, 441
- syntax similarities, 14-15, 48, 1114
- Variant and var, 94, 102-103, 708
- void type, 63, 84, 94-96

C++ similarity

- importance, 17, 63, 557
- literal suffixes, 53, 59, 67-69
- suffixes, 53, 59, 264

Calculated properties, 79, 318-322, 333

Call sites, 246, 261, 923-925

Call stacks for methods, 245-246, 261, 624-626

Callback functions, 219, 737, 1090-1092

CallerMemberName parameter attribute, 270, 895, 918-919

Calling

- constructors, 334-338, 341, 344-345
- collection initializers, 339, 754-759, 805
- external functions, 219, 232-233, 1078-1080
- object initializers, 334, 338-341, 346

CallSite<T> type

- camelCase, 223, 678, 923-925
- description, 223, 678, 923-925
- parameter names, 635, 678, 923-925
- property names, 801, 804, 923-925
- tuples, 111, 642-645, 923-925
- variable names, 223, 798-799, 923-925
- "can do" relationships, 651, 662-663, 923-925

Cancel() method

- parallel iterations, 1027-1032, 1035, 1038
- PLINQ queries, 963-968, 1034-1035, 1038
- tasks, 963-969, 975, 1038

Canceling

- iterations, 863, 875, 1030-1032
- parallel loops, 1023, 1027-1032, 1035
- PLINQ queries, 963-965, 1035, 1038
- tasks, 963-969, 975, 1036

- CancellationToken class
 - asynchronous methods, 966-969, 997, 1038
 - asynchronous streams, 966-969, 997, 1038
 - overview, 963-969, 1027-1029, 1038
 - PLINQ queries, 963-969, 1035, 1038
- CancellationToken property, 966-967, 968-969, 1038
- CancellationTokenSource class, 963-966, 968-969, 1027-1029
- Capacity of lists, 790, 835-837, 843-845
- Capture() method, 228, 605, 1074
- Captured outer variables, 248, 710, 711-715
- Carets (^)
 - arrays, 115, 121-122, 170
 - bitwise operators, 168, 170, 183-187
 - compound assignment, 27, 149-151, 170
 - index from end operator, 121-122, 125-127, 170
 - logical operators, 168-169, 170, 184
 - overriding, 121, 127, 170
- Carriage returns
 - escape sequence, 65-72, 78
 - newlines, 23, 65-72, 78
- Cartesian products
 - inner joins, 780-784, 788-789, 828
 - query expressions, 808-812, 828, 831
- Case labels
 - goto statements, 156-158, 198-200, 205-206
 - switch statements, 197-200, 205-206, 422-423
- Case sensitivity, 17-18, 59, 323
- Casing
 - identifier formats, 17-19, 53, 59-61
 - local variables, 164-165, 710, 714
- cast operator and casting
 - base and derived types, 390-391, 439-440, 555
 - defining, 85, 439-440, 555
 - enums, 85, 421, 537-540
 - generic methods, 85, 439-440, 555
 - implicit conversions, 85, 390-392, 555
 - in inheritance chains, 390-391, 439-440, 555
 - overriding, 85, 439-440, 552-555
 - overview, 85, 439-440, 555
- Catch blocks
 - exceptions, 275, 280-284, 605
 - general, 280-282, 605, 609-610
 - rethrowing exceptions, 275, 601, 605-610
 - working with, 281-282, 601, 605
- Catching exceptions, 280, 601, 605
- cells member in arrays, 114-115, 129-130, 195
- Central processing units (CPUs)
 - description, 933-938, 1021, 1107
 - multithreading, 934-938, 941, 973
 - PLINQ queries, 933-935, 1021, 1114
- Centralizing constructor initializers, 336-346, 367
- Chains
 - constructors, 338, 344, 735
 - circular, 162, 735, 780
 - delegates, 693-694, 727, 735
 - expressions, 716-718, 724-725, 809
 - inheritance, 385-388, 396, 418
 - iterators, 863-866, 871-873, 878
 - null-coalescing operator, 98, 173-178, 179
 - queries, 777, 809, 823-828
 - tasks, 935, 952, 975
- Characters (char) types
 - arithmetic operations, 64-66, 144, 149-151
 - array initial values, 64-66, 118, 144
 - description, 49, 64-66, 144
- Checked conversions, 88-90, 290, 538
- checked keyword, 15, 63, 166-169
- CheckForOverflowUnderflow property, 86-87, 620, 621
- Child types, 134, 293-299, 386
- Church, 294-295, 385, 568-570
- CIL, 38-41, 1114, 1124
- Circular wait conditions in deadlocks, 940-943, 974, 1060-1062
- Class definitions
 - description, 295, 298-299, 385
 - guidelines, 293-295, 298, 568-570

class keyword, 15, 19, 298-299

Classes

- abstract, 295, 410-411, 444-445
- access modifiers, 314-316, 330, 566-567
- associated data, 302, 363, 782
- concrete, 410-411, 482, 568
- constraints, 652, 655, 660-662
- constructors. *See* Constructors
- declaring, 19, 298, 568-570
- deconstructors, 295, 341, 410
- defined, 295, 298-299, 568
- delegates, 693, 726-728, 743
- encapsulation, 301, 314-317, 394
- extension methods, 371-372, 396, 461-463
- files for storing and loading, 298, 311, 557-558
- generics, 623, 631-635, 677
- hierarchy, 221, 295-296, 385-386
- inextensible, 376, 396, 461-463
- inheritance. *See* Inheritance
- instance fields, 302-306, 360, 363
- instance methods, 306, 363, 370-371
- instantiating, 299, 363, 568
- interfaces. *See* Interfaces
- libraries, 557-559, 568, 1126
- members, 302, 394, 475
- methods, 218-220, 291, 363
- multiple interfaces, 444-445, 461-463, 482
- multiple iterators in, 568, 863-865, 873
- nested, 221, 376-378, 568-570
- nullable attributes, 97, 354, 897
- object-oriented programming, 293-295, 298-299, 302
- overview, 134, 295, 385
- partial, 298, 379-384, 568
- properties. *See* Properties
- refactoring, 227, 291, 568
- sealed, 394, 397, 406
- static, 363, 367-370, 373
- static members. *See* Static members
- vs. structs, 487, 499-500, 545
- this keyword, 15, 298, 307-309

Clear() method, 761-763, 863, 1115-1118

CLI, 4-7, 887-889, 1106-1109

Clock speeds, 154, 933, 938-942

Clone() method, 338, 365, 508-509

Close() method, 312, 581-589, 763

Closed over outer variables, 248, 710, 711-713

Closures, 581-584, 589-591, 605

CLR (Common Language Runtime)

- description, 38-39, 1106-1109, 1114
- enums, 533, 537-538, 1126
- namespaces, 567-568, 1114, 1126

CLS (Common Language Specification)

- description, 39, 1114, 1125-1126
- libraries, 39, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
- metadata, 1114, 1125-1126, 1127

CLSCompliant attribute, 903, 914, 1126

CLU language, 39, 1114, 1124-1126

Clusters, 786, 809, 863

Code access security, 315-316, 1093-1095, 1119-1120

Code blocks

- error trapping, 274-275, 281-282, 619
- if statements, 156-163, 197, 205
- loops, 156, 162-163, 188-193
- scope, 162-163, 164-165, 702

Code editors for preprocessor directives, 4, 207-214, 572

Code readability, 17, 161-163, 227

CodeAnalysis class, 558, 709, 712

Cold tasks, 934-937, 947, 975

Collect() method, 754-757, 761, 832-834

Collections

- anonymous types, 754-756, 797, 800-807
- class categories, 754-756, 832-837, 845
- dictionaries, 832-836, 845-849
- foreach loops, 194, 759-760, 863-864
- IEnumerable<T>, 800, 832-834, 995-997
- indexers, 832-834, 854, 860-863
- initializers, 338-340, 754-759
- interfaces, 463, 754-756, 832-834
- iterators. *See* Iterators
- join operations. *See* Join operations
- linked lists, 463, 832-837, 863
- null values, 82, 173-175, 863
- overview, 113, 754-755, 832-837

- queues, 832-837, 853-855
- searching, 808-810, 832-837, 843
- shared states, 858, 974, 1069
- sorted, 779, 821, 832-841
- sorting, 696-698, 821, 839-841
- stacks, 624, 631-634, 853-855
- standard query operators. See Standard query operators
- thread synchronization, 1041, 1051, 1069
- total ordering, 777-779, 821, 839-842
- Collisions, 780, 852, 941
- Colons (:)

 - conditional operators, 163, 166-172, 175
 - constraints, 106, 344, 656
 - constructors, 336-339, 344, 757
 - derived classes, 344, 387, 463
 - hexadecimal format, 59-61, 64-66, 344
 - labels, 106, 206, 344

- COM threading model, 935-938, 973, 1075
- Combine() method
 - delegates, 259-260, 653, 736
 - hash codes, 248, 259, 851-852
 - parameters, 248, 259-260, 653
- COMException type, 284, 609-614, 617
- Command-line arguments, 224, 243, 269
- CommandLineInfo class, 886-890, 896, 1109
- CommandLineRequiredAttribute, 269, 896, 900-908
- CommandLineSwitchAliasAttribute, 889, 895-896, 900-908
- CommandLineUtils package, 4-5, 886-889, 1109
- Commas (,)

 - arrays, 112, 115-120, 135
 - attributes, 881, 897, 898-900
 - constraints, 115-116, 193, 656
 - enums, 533-537, 540-542, 1091
 - for loops, 115-116, 188, 192-194
 - interfaces, 443-445, 461-463, 482
 - methods, 228, 291, 897
 - parameters, 116, 228, 701
 - variable declarations, 106, 115-116, 193

- Comments
 - guidelines, 17, 34-36, 571-574
 - overview, 34-36, 291, 571-573
 - XML, 34-37, 571-574
- Common Intermediate Language (CIL)
 - anonymous types, 610, 797-798, 1124-1126
 - assemblies, 38-40, 1114, 1124-1126
 - boxing code, 524-526, 610, 1124
 - compilation to, 38-40, 1114, 1124
 - description, 38, 1114, 1124
 - events, 752, 1114, 1124
 - general catch blocks, 524, 610, 1124
 - generics representation, 677-678, 1114, 1124
 - ILDASM, 38, 1114, 1124-1126
 - indexers, 38, 1114, 1124
 - metadata, 1114, 1124, 1125-1126
 - outer variable implementation, 38, 713, 1124-1126
 - output, 38, 1114, 1124
 - properties, 332-333, 1114, 1124
 - purpose, 38, 1114, 1124
- Common Language Infrastructure (CLI)
 - assemblies, 1106-1109, 1114, 1121-1126
 - Base Class Library, 1109, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
 - CIL, 1106-1109, 1114, 1124
 - CLS, 1106-1109, 1113-1114, 1124-1126
 - compilation to, 1114, 1121, 1124-1126
 - CTS, 1106-1109, 1114, 1124-1126
 - description, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1126
 - encapsulation, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1126
 - garbage collection, 39, 577, 1115-1118
 - implementations, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1125
 - manifests, 39, 1109, 1124-1126
 - metadata, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1126
 - Microsoft .NET Framework, 5, 1109-1114, 1124
 - modules, 39, 1109, 1124-1126
 - multicast delegates, 739, 1106-1109, 1124
 - namespaces, 1078, 1109, 1124-1126
 - .NET Core, 5, 1109-1114, 1124
 - .NET Native feature, 1109, 1124, 1128

- .NET Standard version, 1106-1109, 1113-1114, 1124
- overview, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1125
- P/Invoke, 1078, 1106-1109, 1124-1126
- performance, 39, 1106-1109, 1124
- platform portability, 1109, 1113-1114, 1124-1125
- runtime, 39, 1106-1109, 1124
- type safety, 39, 1106-1109, 1124-1126
- Xamarin compiler, 1106-1109, 1113-1114, 1124
- Common Language Runtime (CLR)
 - description, 38-39, 1106-1108, 1114-1116
 - enums, 537, 1114, 1126
 - namespaces, 44, 1106-1108, 1114
- Common Language Specification (CLS)
 - description, 1106-1109, 1114, 1124-1126
 - libraries, 39, 1114, 1124-1126
 - metadata, 39, 1114, 1124-1126
- Common Type System (CTS), 1107, 1125, 1126
- Compacting objects in garbage collection, 576-578, 1100, 1115-1118
- Compare() method, 515, 687, 850
- CompareExchange() method, 515-518, 850-851, 1056
- CompareTo() method
 - collection sorts, 647, 838-842, 850
 - interfaces, 455-456, 647, 850
 - tree sorts, 647-650, 698, 838-840
- Comparing
 - binary tree nodes, 648-650, 724, 872-873
 - collections items, 808-810, 832-837, 850
 - compare/exchange pattern, 423-425, 433, 1056
 - floating-point types, 53-56, 63, 145-147
 - strings, 63, 168, 514
- Comparison operators
 - overriding, 167-169, 548-549, 552
 - pointers, 167-168, 548-549, 1102
- Compatibility between enum types, 487, 533-538, 542-545
- Compilation
 - ahead of time, 207-208, 1114-1116, 1121
 - disassembling, 34, 38-44, 1121
 - to machine code, 38-40, 1114-1116, 1121
 - sample output, 6, 12, 562
 - source code, 3-4, 10-12, 1114
 - static vs. dynamic, 367, 926, 1114
- CompilerGeneratedAttribute, 333, 900, 906-908
- Complement operator (~), 138-139, 170, 183-187
- Complexity of asynchronous requests, 975, 981-985, 1012
- ComponentModel class, 295, 394, 497
- Components in compilation, 207, 1114-1116, 1121-1123
- Composite formatting
 - description, 32-33, 36, 75-77
 - patterns, 77, 424, 433-435
 - strings, 32-33, 75-77, 143
- Compound assignment
 - bitwise, 149, 183-187, 552
 - mathematical operators, 139-142, 149, 552
 - overriding, 149, 552, 736
- Compress() method, 445, 687, 1118
- Concat() method for strings, 75, 143, 259-260
- Concat() operator for queries, 143, 808-812, 825-828
- Concatenating strings, 75-77, 104, 143
- Concrete classes, 293-295, 298-299, 482
- Concurrent collection classes, 832-837, 1069, 1076
- Concurrent operations, 154, 937-942, 1061
- ConcurrentBag<T> class, 634, 1068-1069, 1076
- ConcurrentDictionary<TKey, TValue> class, 659, 832-836, 845-849
- ConcurrentQueue<T> class, 631-634, 853-855, 1068-1069

- ConcurrentStack<T> class, 624, 631-634, 853-855
- Conditional clauses in catch blocks, 275, 280-282, 605-606
- Conditional operators
 - null. See Null-conditional operator
 - overriding, 169-172, 548, 552-554
 - working with, 137, 143, 166-171
- Conditional types, 166, 169-172, 205
- ConditionalAttribute, 354, 900-903, 912-916
- ConditionalExpression expression trees, 166, 428, 716-725
- Conditions
 - for loops, 156, 166, 188-194
 - if statements, 156-161, 166, 205
- Consequence statements in if statements, 156-163, 166, 204-205
- Console
 - comments, 28, 34-36, 571-574
 - input, 7, 28-31, 225
 - newlines, 67, 70-72, 78
 - output, 28, 31, 723
 - round-trip formatting, 62, 75-77, 514
 - string methods, 28-31, 75, 225
- const keyword
 - constants, 15, 19, 373
 - encapsulation, 15, 19, 394
- ConstantExpression expression trees, 154, 716-720, 723-725
- Constants
 - expressions and locals, 193, 373, 714-716
 - pattern matching, 423-425, 433-438, 441
 - switch statements, 197-200, 205-206, 422-424
- Constructed struct types, 293, 487, 545-547
- Constructor implementation, 407, 463, 832-834
- Constructors
 - attributes, 338, 897, 903
 - base classes, 402, 410, 660
 - chaining, 336-338, 341-345, 512
 - collection initializers, 338-341, 754-759
 - constraints, 337-338, 657, 660-662
 - declaring, 298, 334-338, 344-345
 - default, 337-338, 341-345, 510
 - finalizers, 341, 581-584, 596
 - generics, 623, 638, 660
 - initializers, 334, 338-341, 344-346
 - methods called during, 334-338, 341, 344-346
 - new operator, 335, 511, 548
 - non-nullable reference type properties, 346-350, 505, 510
 - object initializers, 334, 338-341, 344-346
 - overloading, 336-338, 341-345
 - overview, 294-295, 336-338, 341
 - propagating exceptions from, 280, 609, 622
 - static, 359-360, 363, 366-369
 - structs, 338, 495, 510-511
- Contains() method
 - list searches, 833, 842-848, 853-855
 - stack searches, 624, 846-848, 853-855
- ContainsGenericParameters property, 660, 677-678, 891-893
- ContainsKey() method, 845-849, 852-855, 929
- ContainsValue() method, 515-516, 842-846, 848-850
- Context switches, 200, 428, 937-938
- Contextual keywords, 15-16, 19, 811-813
- Continuation of tasks, 935, 950-956, 975
- continue statements
 - lambda expressions, 697-702, 716, 725
 - overview, 156, 193, 203-206
 - switch statements, 197, 200, 204-206
 - working with, 188, 193, 203-206
- ContinueWith() method
 - asynchronous requests, 951-953, 980-981, 1074
 - synchronization context, 951-953, 1003-1005, 1015-1018
 - tasks, 951-953, 980-982, 1003-1005
- Contravariance
 - delegates, 671-676, 707-708

- generics, 660, 672-676, 708
 - type parameters, 660, 672-676, 708
- Control flow, 156-158, 203-205, 950
- Conversions
 - as operator, 392, 439-440, 555-556
 - to binary representation, 60-61, 182, 185
 - Boolean type, 63, 88-89, 554-555
 - boxing, 88, 523-527, 530-532
 - casts, 88-89, 391-392, 555
 - checked and unchecked, 86-89, 391-392, 620-621
 - collections to arrays, 682, 774-776, 790
 - covariant, 391-392, 672-674, 708
 - dynamic objects, 88-89, 555, 920
 - enums, 89, 536-539, 1091
 - explicit, 88, 391-392, 555-556
 - false return values, 88-90, 147, 554
 - implementing classes and interfaces, 391-392, 444-445, 457
 - implicit, 88, 390-392, 555-556
 - overriding operators, 392, 548, 552-555
 - overview, 88-89, 391-392, 523
 - type safety, 88-89, 391-392, 555
 - without casts, 84-85, 88, 555
- Cooperative cancellation, 963-968, 1030, 1036-1038
- Copying
 - arrays, 130-132, 508, 676
 - directories, 261-264, 365, 371
 - null values, 82, 96, 508-509
 - reference types, 93-96, 134, 488-492
 - variables, 492, 508, 530
- CopyTo() method
 - collections, 365, 371, 833-837
 - directories, 261-266, 365, 371
- Core .NET frameworks, 44-47, 483, 1109-1113
- CoreCLR compiler, 44, 47, 1109-1116
- Cores, 47, 933-938, 1110-1113
- Count property for collections, 682, 773-776, 835-837
- Count() method
 - description, 773-776, 987, 1043-1045
 - elements, 760, 773-776, 1043-1045
 - index-based collection, 760, 773-776, 839
- CountdownEvent event, 1003-1005, 1068, 1074
- CountOccurrencesAsync() method, 976-978, 981, 986-988
- Covariance
 - in arrays, 120, 673-676, 708
 - delegates, 669-676, 707-708
 - generics, 669-677, 708
 - out modifier, 358, 671-674, 707-708
- CPUs (central processing units)
 - description, 933-938, 1021, 1107
 - multithreading, 934-938, 941, 973
 - PLINQ queries, 933-934, 1021, 1034-1039
- Create() method, 227-228, 310-311, 402
- Cryptographer class, 316, 369-370, 998
- .cs file extension, 3-4, 10, 264
- CTS (Common Type System), 1107, 1125, 1126
- Curly braces ({})
 - arrays, 115-116, 162-163, 757
 - classes, 24, 162-163, 570
 - code blocks, 24, 70-72, 162-163
 - code formatting, 24, 70-72, 162-163
 - collection initializers, 162-163, 339, 757
 - lambda expressions, 162-163, 697-699, 702-704
 - methods, 24, 162-163, 702
 - namespaces, 24, 162-163, 567-570
 - object initializers, 162-163, 338-339, 757
 - pattern matching, 162-163, 427-429, 433-435
 - properties, 24, 162-163, 757
 - string interpolation, 32, 70-71, 162-163
 - switch statements, 162-163, 197-200, 428
 - type definitions, 24, 162-163, 757
 - use of, 24, 70-71, 162-163
- Current property for iterators, 760, 863-868, 878
- CurrentDomain class
 - exceptions, 612-615, 618, 622
 - process exits, 590-591, 594-595, 962-964

CurrentId property for asynchronous tasks, 366-368, 991, 1013-1016

Custom attributes, 881, 896-907, 914

Custom conversions, 88-89, 391-392, 523

Custom exceptions, 280, 599-601, 612-615

Custom objects in dynamic programming, 293-295, 920, 926

Custom value types for structs, 487, 544-547, 1097

D

Data namespace, 221, 567-570, 782

Data persistence, 310-311, 314, 782

Data types, 25, 92-93, 134

DataBinder class, 410, 683, 922-923

Deadlocks

- avoiding, 941-943, 974, 1060-1062
- causes, 940-943, 974, 1060-1062

DEBUG preprocessor identifier, 17-19, 207-214

Debug() method, 514, 564, 723

Debugging

- preprocessor directives for, 207-214
- source code, 3-4, 12, 572

Decimal type, 53-58, 84, 144-145

Declaration spaces in code blocks, 24, 162-165, 569

Declaring

- arrays, 112, 115-120, 123
- await using statement, 989-993, 999, 1003-1005
- BinaryTree<T> class, 648-651, 667, 865-866
- class type constraints, 651-656, 660-663
- classes, 291-293, 298, 568-570
- constants, 269, 298, 373
- constructors, 298, 334-338, 344-345
- deconstructors, 341, 358-359, 512
- delegate types, 689-693, 707, 716
- enums, 533-542, 1091
- events, 728, 743-747, 750-753
- external methods, 228, 232-233, 291

- generic interfaces, 444-445, 635-638, 663
- generic methods, 651, 663-664, 892
- instance fields, 303-307, 360, 363
- interface constraints, 444-445, 651-652, 656
- local variables, 25-27, 164-165, 193
- Main() method, 20-22, 227, 243-246
- methods, 228, 291, 298
- namespaces, 221-222, 235-239, 568-570
- out variables, 26-27, 193, 291
- parameters, 228, 267-270, 701
- pointers, 95, 1096-1103
- properties, 318-322, 333, 367
- read-only automatically implemented
 - properties, 326, 374-375, 506-507
- read-only fields, 326, 374-376, 506-507
- return types, 84, 228-231, 700
- static constructors, 359-360, 367-370, 373
- static fields, 360-363, 367-369, 373-374
- structs, 506, 547, 1083
- tuples, 106-108, 359, 803
- types from unmanaged structs, 654, 1083-1084, 1097
- variables, 25-27, 193, 298

Deconstructors, 341, 357-358, 512

Decrement operators

- description, 138-139, 150-154, 183
- loop example, 138-139, 150-154, 1044
- thread-safe, 150-154, 1044, 1071-1072

Decrement() method, 150-151, 1044, 1071-1072

Default constructors, 337-338, 341-346, 510

Default interface members

- vs. extension methods, 461-463, 481, 484-485
- versioning, 446, 464-467, 481-484

default operator for generics, 630, 651, 662-663

default sections in switch statements, 197-200, 205-206, 422-424

Default types, 134, 269, 640

Default values

- generics, 269, 630, 638-641
- structs, 269, 510, 640

- DefaultIfEmpty() method, 269, 288, 640
- Deferred execution
 - LINQ, 775-777, 793-796, 806
 - query expressions, 718-720, 777, 806
- Defining
 - abstract classes, 410-411, 414, 453
 - attributes, 881, 896-900, 914
 - calculated properties, 318, 322, 333
 - cast operators, 85, 439-440, 555
 - custom conversions, 88-89, 391-392, 555
 - custom exceptions, 599-601, 612-615, 618
 - enums, 533, 540-542, 1091
 - finalizers, 341, 581-584, 596
 - generic classes, 631-634, 677, 832-835
 - generic constructors, 635-638, 660, 677
 - generic methods, 623, 663-664, 892
 - indexers, 832-836, 860-864
 - iterators, 760, 863-868, 873
 - namespaces, 221, 235, 567-570
 - nested classes, 298, 376-380, 568-570
 - partial classes, 379-381, 383-384, 568
 - preprocessor symbols, 15, 207-210, 214
 - publishers, 725-728, 743, 753
 - stacks, 624-628, 631-634, 854
 - static methods, 360, 363, 367-370
 - subscriber methods, 727, 730-731, 753
- Delay() method, 1003-1005, 1066-1068, 1074-1076
- Delegate class, 683, 694, 753
- Delegate constraints, 651-657, 660-663
- delegate keyword, 716, 747, 750
- Delegate type, 693, 726-728, 738
- Delegates
 - constraints, 693, 716, 743
 - deferred execution, 693, 716, 727
 - event notifications, 727, 737-739, 753
 - events, 726-728, 743, 753
 - vs. expression trees, 684, 693, 716-725
 - function pointers to, 693, 727, 1090-1092
 - instantiating, 693-694, 726-728, 738
 - internals, 693-694, 716, 727
 - introduction, 693-694, 716, 727
 - invoking, 693-694, 727, 739
 - method returns and pass-by-reference, 693-694, 727, 735
 - nesting, 691-694, 716, 727
 - null-conditional operators, 173-175, 178-180, 733
 - overview, 693-694, 727, 743
 - predicates, 690, 716, 767
 - process exits, 590-591, 594-595, 735
 - publish-subscribe pattern operators, 727, 743, 753
 - statement lambdas for, 697-699, 705, 716
 - structural equality, 691-694, 707, 716
 - tasks, 693-694, 727, 945-946
 - types, 690-694, 726-728, 738
 - unsafe code, 693, 1093-1095, 1104
- delete operator, 138-139, 143, 169-170
- Deleting files, 583-584, 770, 808-810
- Delimited comments, 34-36, 70, 571-574
- Delimiters, 23, 573, 716
- DenyChildAttach task continuation option, 951-958, 1026, 1031
- Dependencies in libraries, 11, 557-559, 562-564
- Dequeue() method, 624, 760-762, 853-855
- Dereferencing
 - description, 95, 491-492, 1098
 - null-conditional operator for, 98-99, 173-178, 733
 - null references, 83, 98-101, 173-175
 - null values, 82-83, 98-100, 173-175
 - pointers, 95, 492, 1097-1103
- Derivation
 - casting between base and derived types, 297, 389-391, 402
 - custom conversions, 89, 389-392, 555
 - extension methods, 371-372, 396-397, 461-463
 - interfaces, 444, 456, 458-463
 - overview, 389, 397, 418
 - private access modifier, 315-316, 393-394, 566

- protected access modifier, 315-316, 393-397, 566
- sealed classes, 397, 406, 410
- single inheritance, 296-297, 386, 396-397
 - from System.Object, 389-391, 418, 463
- Derived members, 386, 418, 660
- Derived objects converted to base class, 386-391, 410, 418
- Derived types
 - casting between base types, 297, 389-391, 402
 - classes, 296-297, 386, 410
 - description, 296-297, 386, 410
- DescriptionAttribute, 881, 895-897, 900
- Deserialize() method, 463, 538, 668
- Deterministic destruction, 581-584, 596, 1118
- Deterministic finalization, 581-584, 588-591, 596
- Deterministic resource cleanup, 583-584, 1087, 1115-1118
- Diagnostics class
 - debugging with, 496, 514, 564
 - notifications, 496, 564, 737
 - nullable attributes, 101-102, 350, 354
 - processes, 496, 564, 1010
- Diagramming interfaces, 444-445, 456-458, 461-464
- Dictionaries
 - collection initializers, 339, 754-758, 845
 - interfaces, 463, 832-836, 845
 - key equality, 845-852
 - sorted, 832-836, 845-849, 852
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 1041, 1061
 - working with, 680, 832-836, 845-848
- Dictionary<TKey, TValue> class
 - collections, 832-836, 845, 854
 - working with, 659, 845-849, 852-854
- Digit separators, 23, 59-61, 143
- Dimensions for arrays, 115-120, 123-125, 129-130
- Directives
 - dynamic, 207, 237-241, 920
 - preprocessor. See Preprocessor directives
 - strings, 67-69, 207, 235-240
- Directories, 261-262, 770, 782
- DirectoryInfo class
 - extension methods, 371-372, 461-463, 886-890
 - inner joins, 463, 780-784, 789
- DirectoryInfoExtension class, 371-372, 396, 461-463
- DisallowNull attribute, 286, 348-350, 354
- Disambiguating multiple Main() methods, 218-219, 227, 243-247
- Disassembling programs, 38-44, 557, 1122
- Discards
 - out parameters, 251-253, 358, 701
 - tuples, 106-108, 807, 815
- DispatcherTimer class, 242, 1011-1013, 1074-1076
- Disposability of tasks, 933-937, 971-975, 1013
- Dispose() method
 - collections, 583-584, 588-589, 763
 - finalization, 583-589, 595-596, 1087
 - resource cleanup, 583-589, 595, 1087
- DisposeAsync() method, 584, 1003-1005, 1074
- Distinct members in query expressions, 808-812, 823-824, 828-831
- Distinct() operator
 - description, 548, 809, 828-829
 - query expressions, 808-812, 828-831
- Division
 - binary operator, 138-141, 167, 184-185
 - compound assignment, 27, 139-141, 149
 - shift operators, 138-140, 149-151, 183-184
 - by zeros, 138-139, 145-147, 148
- DllImport attribute, 881, 897-900, 914
- DLLs (dynamic link libraries), 920, 1078-1080, 1114

- do/while loops
 - overview, 156, 188-194, 204
 - working with, 188-194, 203-204
- Documentation
 - reflection, 35, 44, 881-882
 - XML files, 10, 35-37, 571-574
- Dollar signs (\$) for string interpolation, 66-67, 70-74, 77
- DotGNU Portable.NET compiler, 12, 44, 1128
- dotnet CLI, 4-5, 1109-1112, 1128
- Dotnet CLI
 - code building and executing, 4-5, 10-12, 1109
 - NuGet references, 5, 558-561, 1109-1112
 - project and library references, 5, 557-562, 1109
 - working with, 4-5, 47, 1109-1112
- Double quotes (")
 - escape sequence, 65-67, 70-74
 - strings, 67, 70-74, 143
- double type
 - overview, 92-93, 134, 1125
 - special characteristics, 53, 145, 1125
- DownloadData() method, 580, 976-978, 981
- DownloadDataTaskAsync() method, 975-978, 981, 984-988
- DownloadString() method, 243-244, 976-978, 981
- Drawing class, 295, 298-299, 832-834
- Duck typing, 50, 799, 926
- Duplicating interfaces, 443-445, 461-465, 637
- dynamic data type principles and behaviors, 920-922, 926, 1125
- Dynamic invocation
 - delegates, 693, 716, 727
 - members, 920-925, 930-931
 - nameof operator, 289, 894, 930-931
- Dynamic link libraries (DLLs), 557-559, 1078-1080, 1114

- Dynamic programming
 - binding, 725, 920-926, 930-931
 - custom objects, 293-295, 920, 926-928
 - description, 725, 920, 926
 - overview, 725, 920, 926
 - principles and behaviors, 294-295, 920, 926
 - reflection, 920-922, 931, 1119
 - vs. static compilation, 920-922, 926, 1114
- DynamicInvoke() method, 733, 923-931, 1078
- DynamicObject class, 295, 680, 920-931

E

- Editors
 - dotnet CLI, 4-5, 12, 1109-1112
 - preprocessor directives, 207-214, 237
 - source code, 3-4, 12, 562
 - Visual Studio 2019. See Visual Studio 2019
- Elements, counting, 760, 773, 1043-1045
- else clauses, 160-163, 169, 193
- Empty collections, 113, 754-756, 863
- Empty property for events, 324, 431, 743-752
- Empty strings, 81-82, 288, 514
- Encapsulation
 - classes, 294-295, 314-317, 394
 - CLI, 5, 394, 1106-1109
 - const modifier, 314-316, 372-375, 394
 - information hiding, 301, 314-316, 394
 - object-oriented programming, 293-295, 314, 394
 - with protected interface members, 394, 476, 484
 - publications, 294-295, 314-316, 394
 - readonly modifier, 331, 374-376, 506-507
 - subscriptions, 394, 743, 753
 - well-formed types, 314, 394, 545-547
- EncryptAsync() method, 994-1001, 1004, 1033
- EndsWith() method, 122, 462, 842-844
- Enqueue() method, 258, 314, 853-855

- Enter() method with monitors, 528, 1046-1049, 1053
- Enum class, 487, 533-542, 1091
- enum values
 - conversions, 532-534, 538, 1091
 - flags, 533-534, 540-544, 910
 - FlagsAttribute, 541-544, 906-911
 - metadata, 533-535, 541-544, 1091
 - overview, 487, 533-535, 1091
 - parsing, 533-534, 538-539, 1091
 - type compatibility, 487, 533-538, 1091
- Enumerable class
 - delegates, 463, 694, 742
 - element counting, 760-761, 765-766, 773-776
 - filters, 463, 769, 833-834
 - inner joins, 463, 780-784, 788-789
 - methods, 463, 766, 832-834
 - parallel queries, 772, 833, 1033-1039
 - query expressions, 463, 809-812, 831-833
 - sorts, 778-779, 839, 1034
 - standard query operators, 777, 806-810, 833
- Enumerator patterns for iterators, 760, 863-868, 878
- Environment class
 - command-line arguments, 269, 886-889, 896
 - newlines, 67, 70-72, 78
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 1046, 1076
- Equality
 - C# vs. C++, 63, 168, 515
 - collections, 463, 755, 832-834
 - delegates, 691-694, 707, 716
 - dictionary keys, 832-834, 845-852
 - floating-point types, 53-56, 145-148
 - with null, 82, 173-175, 493
 - objects, 167-168, 493-494, 515
 - operators, 63, 167-170, 548
- EqualityComparer<T> class, 515-516, 838-842, 850-852
- Equals signs (=)
 - compound assignment, 63, 149, 168
 - delegates, 167-168, 548, 736
 - equality operator, 63, 167-168, 548
 - null checks, 98, 168, 173-175
 - null-coalescing operator, 98, 168, 173-178
 - overriding, 63, 167-168, 548
 - pointers, 63, 168, 1102-1103
 - precedence, 63, 140-142, 167-168
 - properties, 168, 333, 515
 - relational and equality operators, 63, 167-168, 548
 - shift operators, 149, 167-170, 183-184
 - variable assignment, 63, 149, 168
- Equals() method
 - collections, 515-518, 832-835, 850
 - description, 168, 515-518, 548
 - with GetHashCode(), 515-520, 850-852
 - implementing, 515-518, 548, 850
 - null values, 98, 173-175, 515-518
 - overriding, 515-518, 548, 850
 - reflection, 493-494, 515-518, 548
- Equi-joins, 780-784, 788-789, 809
- Error handling
 - catch blocks, 275-276, 605, 610
 - exception class inheritance, 280, 599-601, 605
 - with exceptions, 280, 599-601, 622
 - P/Invoke, 1077-1078, 1085-1092
 - publish-subscribe pattern, 727, 737-743, 753
 - throw statements, 284-285, 601, 607-608
 - trapping, 274, 599-601, 604-605
- Errors
 - array coding, 114-115, 124, 132
 - preprocessor directives for, 207-214
- Escape sequences, 65-67, 160-163, 204
- Essential source code, 3-4, 12, 562
- EssentialCSharp.sln file, 4, 10-14, 245
- Etch A Sketch game, 119, 158-160, 196
- Evaluation of operators, 141-143, 167-169, 548
- event keyword, 743-750, 751-753
- Event notifications, 737, 743-747, 750-753
- EventArgs class, 181, 463, 743-752

- EventHandler<T> class, 726-728, 743, 746-753
- Events
 - coding conventions, 743-744, 747, 750-753
 - declaring, 743-747, 750-753
 - generics and delegates, 726-728, 743, 747
 - implementation, 444, 743-744, 753
 - internals, 737, 743-747, 750-753
 - listeners, 743-744, 747, 753
 - overview, 743-744, 750, 753
 - publication encapsulation, 743, 746-747, 753
 - publish-subscribe pattern. See Publish-subscribe pattern
 - purpose, 727, 743-744, 747
 - subscription encapsulation, 727, 743, 753
 - thread synchronization, 932, 973, 1041
- Exception conditions, 601-606, 612-614, 622
- Exceptional continuation, 204, 825-827, 950-952
- ExceptionDispatchInfo class
 - asynchronous requests, 608, 618, 1074
 - purpose, 599, 608, 618
- Exceptions
 - catch blocks, 275, 601, 605
 - class inheritance, 280, 599-601, 605
 - custom, 280, 599-601, 612-615
 - error trapping, 274-275, 280, 601
 - expected situations, 280, 599-601, 605
 - guidelines, 599-601, 612-614, 622
 - overview, 280, 599-601, 622
 - parallel loops, 1021-1023, 1028, 1035-1039
 - PLINQ queries, 796, 825-827, 1034-1035
 - propagating from constructors, 336-338, 341, 658
 - publish-subscribe pattern, 727, 743, 753
 - rethrowing, 601, 607-609, 622
 - serializable, 461-463, 599, 617
 - tasks, 599-601, 958, 975
 - threads, 937, 962-964, 972-973
 - throw statements, 283-284, 601, 607-609
 - types, 280, 601, 622
- ExceptionServices class, 461-463, 599-601, 617
- Exchange() method, 463, 870-871, 1056
- Exclamation points (!)
 - equality operators, 167-170, 175, 548
 - generics, 66-67, 638, 678
 - inequality operators, 143, 167-170, 548
 - logical operators, 143, 166-171, 184
 - null-forgiving operators, 98, 168-170, 173-175
 - overriding, 66-67, 143, 168-170
 - pointers, 66-67, 168-170, 1102-1103
- Excluding code, 161-163, 208, 213
- Exclusive OR (XOR) operators
 - bitwise, 168-169, 170, 184-187
 - logical, 167-169, 170, 184
- Executables, 12, 557, 1121-1122
- ExecuteSynchronously task continuation
 - option, 951-953, 957, 1003-1005
- Execution time, 225, 933, 939-941
- ExecutionEngineException type, 604-605, 613-618, 622
- Exit() method with monitors, 528, 1047-1049, 1053
- Expanded form for parameters, 228, 259-260, 701
- Explicit casts
 - base and derived types, 389-391, 457, 652
 - enums, 536-539, 542, 885
 - guidelines, 85, 390-392, 457
 - overview, 85, 390-391, 555
- Explicit deterministic resource cleanup, 583-584, 595-596, 1087
- Explicit member implementation, 454-457, 476, 485
- Exponential notation, 58-61, 150, 182
- Expression bodied members
 - declaring, 231, 697-699, 716-718
 - properties, 231, 333, 522
- Expression bodied methods, 231, 716-719, 725

Expression trees
 deferred execution, 716-720, 723-725, 775-777
 vs. delegates, 684, 693, 716-725
 description, 716-720, 723-725, 831
 examining, 716-720, 723-725, 831
 object graphs, 716-720, 723-725, 831
 SQL queries, 718, 724-725, 831

Expressions
 constant, 154-155, 373, 425
 lambda. See Lambda expressions
 query. See Query expressions

Extended Application Markup Language (XAML), 35-37, 572, 1109

Extensible Markup Language, 36, 37, 572-574

Extension methods
 classes, 371-372, 396, 461-463
 vs. default interface members, 396, 461-463, 481
 derivation, 371-372, 396, 461-463
 interfaces, 396, 444-445, 461-463

Extensions, 371-372, 396, 461-463

External methods and functions
 calling, 253, 1078-1080, 1086
 declaring, 232-233, 291, 1078

F

f-reachable (finalization) queues, 582-584, 588, 595-596

Factory interfaces for constructor constraints, 651-652, 656-662, 673-674

FailFast() method, 604, 622, 1074

Failure type, 604-605, 619, 802

false operator, 63, 166-171, 554

Fat arrow notation (=>) for lambda expressions, 697-706, 716-718, 1008

FCL (Framework Class Library), 557-558, 568, 1109-1114

Fibonacci numbers, 188, 189, 1020-1022

Fields

guidelines, 302-303, 375, 521
 instance. See Instance fields
 static members, 360-363, 367-370, 373
 strings, 80, 115-116, 143
 thread synchronization, 1041, 1046, 1061

FIFO (first in, 142, 189, 624)

FileAttributes class, 896-900, 906-908, 911

FileInfo class
 inner joins, 770, 782-784, 814-815
 projections, 770, 808-810, 814-815
 query expressions, 808-810, 814-815, 821-822

Files
 deleting, 583-584, 770, 808-810
 extensions, 10, 264, 770
 Java language vs. C#, 1-3, 14, 1114
 project, 10, 558-562, 808-810
 storing and loading with, 311-314, 557, 782

FileStream class
 finalizers, 312, 583-589, 596
 IAsyncDisposable, 583, 586-589, 997-999
 storing and loading files, 311-312, 597-598, 770
 ToString(), 311, 513-514, 532

Filters
 Browse, 770, 808-812, 843
 collections, 113, 682, 808-810
 exceptions, 280, 605, 808-810
 query expressions, 718, 808-812, 820

Finalization, 581-584, 589-591, 595-596

finalization (f-reachable) queues, 581-584, 588-590, 595-596

finalize() method, 341, 581-584, 595-596

Finalizers
 constructors, 341, 581-584, 589-590
 generics, 341, 581-584, 595-596
 resource cleanup, 582-584, 589-590, 595-596
 structs, 341, 511, 581-584

finally blocks in error trapping, 279-282, 604-605, 1047

FindAll() method, 770, 794, 844

First in, 6, 639, 812

- fixed statement for pointers, 96, 491-492, 1096-1102
- Flags, 463, 540-544, 906-910
- FlagsAttribute
 - enums, 540-543, 906-911
 - overview, 897, 905-908, 911
- Flatten() method, 769-770, 782, 800
- Flattening sequences in query expressions, 808-810, 823-828, 831
- float type
 - overview, 53, 56, 145
 - special characteristics, 53-56, 92, 145-148
- Floating-point types
 - equality issues, 53-56, 145-148
 - overview, 53-56, 92, 145-148
 - special characteristics, 53-56, 92, 145-148
- Flow control
 - Boolean expressions, 137, 166, 169
 - code blocks, 156, 204, 950
 - description, 156, 204, 950
 - for loops, 188, 192-193, 204
 - foreach loops, 194-195, 204, 1023-1025
 - if statements, 156-163, 166, 204-205
 - introduction, 137, 156, 950
 - jump statements, 156, 200, 204-206
 - preprocessor directives, 137, 207-214
 - scope, 156, 164, 950
 - switch statements, 156, 197-200, 204-206
 - task continuation, 204, 950-955, 975
 - threads, 936-938, 964, 973
 - while and do/while loops, 156, 188-193, 203-204
- for loops
 - overview, 188-194, 760, 1021
 - parallel iterations, 193, 1020-1023, 1035-1039
- For() method, 190-194, 760, 1023-1024
- Forcing resource cleanup, 576-577, 583-584, 1115-1118
- foreach loops
 - arrays, 192-195, 760, 1023
 - async streams, 994-999, 1023-1025, 1035
 - collections, 194, 759-761, 863-864
 - enumerator patterns, 200, 760, 863-864
 - IEnumerable<T>, 760, 765-766, 869-871
 - overview, 192-194, 760, 863-864
 - parallel iterations, 1020-1025, 1035-1039
- Form feeds escape sequence, 65-73, 160, 204
- Formal parameter lists, 228, 664, 701
- Format items, 75-77, 843, 897
- Format strings, 31-33, 75-77, 143
- Format() method, 32-33, 75-77, 513-514
- FormatException type, 84, 280-282, 619
- FormatMessage() method, 32, 75-77, 514
- Formatting
 - hexadecimal format, 60-61, 66, 77
 - round-trip, 62, 65-67, 77
 - with string interpolation, 32-33, 67, 74-77
 - strings, 32-33, 75-77, 143
- Forward accessing arrays, 112, 120-126, 130-132
- Forward slashes (/)
 - command-line option, 269, 437, 896
 - compound assignment, 67, 106, 149
 - overriding, 59, 65-68, 573
 - precedence, 65-67, 142, 216
 - XML comments, 35-37, 571-572, 573-574
 - XML elements, 36-37, 571-572, 573-574
- Fragile base class problem, 397-398, 402, 410
- Framework Class Library (FCL), 557-558, 1109-1114, 1126
- Framework Design Guidelines, 17-18, 521, 1110-1113
- Frameworks
 - APIs, 45, 1078, 1110-1113
 - .NET. See .NET frameworks
- from keyword in query expressions, 808-813, 823, 831
- FromCurrentSynchronizationContext()
 - method, 1011-1015, 1051-1054, 1076
- Full outer joins, 780-784, 789, 809
- Fully qualified method names, 50, 228, 895
- Func delegate, 688-693, 716, 727

Functions

- external, 1007, 1078-1080, 1086
- pointers to delegates, 689-693, 727, 1090-1092

G

Garbage collection

- CLI, 576-578, 584, 1115-1118
- managed execution, 39, 576-578, 1115-1118
- Microsoft .NET framework, 44, 576-578, 1115-1118
- objects, 576-578, 596, 1115-1118
- overview, 576-578, 595, 1115-1118
- resource cleanup. See Resource cleanup
- weak references, 576-577, 578, 1115-1118

GC class

- finalization, 582-584, 596, 1118
- finalizers, 341, 582-584, 595-596
- garbage collection timing, 576-578, 1100, 1115-1118
- resource cleanup, 576-578, 595, 1115-1118

General catch blocks, 280-282, 605-606, 609-610

Generics

- benefits, 623, 631-635, 677
- CIL representation, 630, 677-678, 709
- classes, 623, 631-634, 681
- constraints. See Constraints
- constructors, 623, 638, 677
- covariance and contravariance, 669-676, 708
- default values, 630, 638-640, 677
- defining, 623, 631-635, 677
- delegates, 690, 693-694, 726-728
- events, 623, 677, 726-728
- examples without, 638, 677, 681
- finalizers, 581-584, 590, 595-596
- instantiating, 623, 638, 677-681
- interfaces and structs, 444-445, 636-638, 651
- internals, 631-633, 646, 677-681
- introduction, 623, 677, 681
- Java, 623, 630-633, 638
- lazy loading, 638, 677, 680-681
- linked lists, 624, 631-638, 835-837
- methods, 623, 664, 681

- nested, 631-633, 638, 643-646
- overview, 623, 677, 681
- reflection, 677, 882-883, 892
- tuples, 108, 642-645, 803
- type parameters, 631-635, 664, 677
- working with, 623, 630-634, 677

get keyword for properties, 309, 318-320, 333

GetAsyncEnumerator() method, 766, 994-997, 1000

GetAwaiter() method, 989-997, 1000, 1003-1006

GetCommandLineArgs() method, 243-244, 269, 886-890

GetCustomAttributes() method, 901-903, 914, 931

GetEnumerator() method

- duck typing, 765-766, 864, 868-871
- iterators, 760, 864-871, 878
- purpose, 760, 863-865, 868-870
- queryable extensions, 766, 833, 868
- standard query operators, 766, 833, 868

GetFiles() method

- directories, 261-264, 770, 821
- inner joins, 770, 782-784, 814

GetGenericArguments() method, 664-665, 677, 891-893

GetHashCode() method

- collections, 519-520, 832-834, 851-852
- description, 418, 516-520, 851-852
- overriding, 408, 516-520, 851-852
- value types, 494, 516-520, 850-852

GetLastError() method, 383, 1079-1080, 1085-1087

GetLength() method, 79, 125, 129

GetMethods() method, 332-333, 829, 884

GetProperties() method, 79, 333, 883-884

GetResult() method

- getters, 253, 332, 1006
- access modifiers, 315-316, 330, 566
- properties, 79, 884, 949

GetType() method

- description, 883-885, 888-893
 - null values, 99-100, 356, 884-885
 - objects, 421, 883-885, 891-893
 - reflection, 883-885, 888-893
 - GetValue() method, 329, 532, 888-890
 - GhostDoc tool, 4-7, 576, 1118
 - Global methods, 113, 237-238, 664
 - Global variables and functions, 232-233, 237, 710
 - goes to operator, 137-139, 143, 439
 - goto statements
 - lambda expressions, 697-705, 716, 725
 - overview, 156, 205-206, 246-247
 - switch statements, 197-200, 205-206, 422
 - Graphs for expression trees, 716-720, 723-725, 831
 - Greater than signs (>)
 - generics, 663-664, 677-678, 698
 - overriding, 139, 167-169, 698
 - pointers, 139, 167-170, 1102-1103
 - referent member access, 139, 167-169, 1102-1103
 - relational operators, 138-139, 167, 168-170
 - shift operators, 139, 167-170, 183
 - XML, 35-37, 167-169, 698
 - group by clause, 786, 809-812, 823-828
 - group clauses in query expressions, 809-812, 823-828, 831
 - GroupBy() method, 786-788, 809, 823-826
 - Grouping query expressions, 808-811, 823-828, 831
 - GroupJoin() method
 - inner joins, 782-789, 809, 826
 - outer joins, 780-789, 809
- H**
- Handle() method
 - asynchronous requests, 975, 1003-1005, 1074
 - task exceptions, 274, 604, 958-961
 - Handlers for process exits, 589-591, 594-595, 1010
 - Hardcoding values, 57-60, 94-96, 373
 - HasFlags() method, 540-544, 888, 906-911
 - Hash codes and tables
 - collection equality, 167, 515-519, 850-852
 - dictionaries, 521, 845-847, 850-852
 - GetHashCode(), 418, 516-520, 851-852
 - Hash symbols (#) for preprocessor directives, 19, 66, 207-214
 - Hat operator (^) for arrays, 121-122, 125-127, 170
 - Header files, 37, 207-210, 239
 - Heap
 - boxing, 523-528, 1100, 1118
 - new operator, 300, 335, 511
 - reference types, 95-96, 488-492, 1097
 - HelloWorld program
 - assemblies, 12, 557-561, 1122
 - CIL output, 38-40, 1114, 1124
 - compiling, 2, 12-14, 557-559
 - debugging, 2, 12-14, 557-561
 - description, 2, 20, 557-561
 - dotnet CLI for, 4-5, 10-12, 557-561
 - preparing, 2, 20, 557
 - project files, 10-14, 20, 557-561
 - stand-alone, 2, 12-14, 557-559
 - Visual Studio 2019 for, 2-4, 7, 12
 - HelloWorld.dll file, 10-12, 557-561, 1122
 - Hexadecimal numbers
 - formatting numbers as, 59-61, 66, 182
 - notation, 60-61, 66, 182-184
 - Unicode characters, 60-61, 66, 144
 - HideScheduler task continuation option, 970-971, 1011-1013, 1031
 - Hierarchy of classes, 295-298, 385-386, 568-570
 - High-latency operations
 - async/await syntax, 985, 991, 1004
 - asynchronous example, 933-935, 975, 1074
 - synchronous example, 933, 939-940, 975

- WPF example, 933-934, 1016, 1074
 - Hill climbing, 193, 1025, 1119
 - Hold and wait conditions in deadlocks, 941-943, 974, 1060-1062
 - Hooking up publishers and subscribers, 726-728, 731-732, 743
 - Horizontal tabs escape sequence, 65, 66-67, 160
 - Hot tasks, 944, 947, 973-975
 - Hungarian notation, 53, 59-61, 66
 - Hyper-Threading, 932-938, 941, 972-973
 - Hyphens (-), 17-19, 59, 138-139
- I**
- I/O-bound operations
 - latency, 933, 934, 937-941
 - performance considerations, 524, 933-934, 1120
 - IAsyncDisposable interface, 584, 763-764, 995-1000
 - IAsyncEnumerable<T> interface
 - async returns, 994-997, 1000, 1004-1006
 - asynchronous streams, 793-795, 994-997, 998-1000
 - LINQ with, 793-796, 995-997, 1000
 - IAsyncEnumerator<string> interface, 763, 994-997, 1000
 - ICollection<T> interface
 - collection initializers, 339, 754-759, 832-834
 - element counting, 759-760, 765, 773
 - members, 463, 759, 832-836
 - IComparable<string> interface, 463, 838-840, 850
 - IComparable<T> interface, 647-650, 667, 838-842
 - IComparer<T> interface, 647-650, 838-842, 850
 - Id property for asynchronous tasks, 333, 367-368, 1014
 - IDE (integrated development environment)
 - debugging support, 7, 209, 572
 - Visual Studio 2019, 1-4, 7, 572
 - Identifiers
 - guidelines, 17-19, 298, 895
 - keywords as, 15-19, 298, 811-813
 - overview, 17-19, 113, 567
 - Identity of objects, 295, 299-302, 782
 - IDictionary<TKey, TValue> interface, 656, 832-836, 845-849
 - IDisposable interface
 - resource cleanup, 583-584, 763-764, 1087
 - tasks, 584, 763-764, 971
 - IDynamicMetaObjectProvider interface, 458-459, 920, 928-931
 - IEnumerable<T> interface
 - collections, 463, 759-760, 832-834
 - delegates, 463, 832-834, 865
 - element counting, 760-762, 765, 773
 - filters, 463, 769, 832-834
 - foreach loops, 760, 763-765, 868
 - iterators, 760, 863-868, 871
 - PLINQ queries, 463, 793-796, 1034-1035
 - projections, 463, 800, 832-834
 - query expressions, 463, 793-796, 833
 - standard query operators, 463, 769, 833
 - task-based asynchronous pattern, 975, 994-997, 1074
 - yield statement, 866-871, 875-879
 - IEnumerator<T> interface
 - foreach loops, 760, 763-765, 868
 - iterators, 863-866, 871, 995-997
 - yield statement, 866-870, 875-879, 994
 - IEqualityComparer<T> interface, 515-516, 838-840, 850-851
 - IEquatable<T> interface, 515-516, 793-795, 850
 - if statements
 - Boolean expressions, 158, 166, 168-171
 - code blocks, 156-163, 166, 205
 - continue statement replacement, 156-161, 203-206

- nested, 158-163, 166, 205
- overview, 156-161, 197, 205
- switch statements for, 197-200, 205-206, 428
- working with, 158-162, 166, 205
- IFileCompression interface, 444, 445, 456-463
- IGrouping type, 463, 786-788, 823-826
- ILDASM (IL Disassembler), 38-40, 41, 43-44
- ICollection<T> interface, 463, 832-837, 854
- ICollection<TKey> interface, 832-837, 849, 854
- ICollection<TValue> interface, 463, 832-837, 854
- Immutability
 - anonymous types, 505-507, 797-798, 801-805
 - delegates, 505-507, 707, 716
 - strings, 28, 67-69, 80-81
 - value types, 96, 488-489, 505-507
- Immutable library, 375, 524, 832-834
- Implementing class conversions with
 - interfaces, 444-445, 451-453, 456-457
- Implicit conversions
 - base and derived types, 389-391, 402, 652
 - guidelines, 88-89, 391-392, 457
 - types, 88-89, 390-392, 555
- Implicit deterministic resource cleanup, 583-584, 595-596, 1087
- Implicit member implementation, 455-458, 476, 485
- implicit operator for types, 391, 439, 554-555
- Implicitly typed local variables, 102, 714, 798-799
- import directive, 207-209, 213-214, 235-239
- in modifier, 315-316, 351, 405
- in parameters, 224, 228, 701
- Including code, 4, 298, 572
- Increment operators
 - description, 139, 150-154, 1057
 - prefix and postfix, 139-142, 149-153, 154
 - thread-safe, 154, 1043-1045, 1057
- Increment() method, 150-154, 1044, 1057
- Indenting code
 - if statements, 24, 158-163, 166
 - readability, 24, 36, 160-163
- Index operator
 - lists, 122, 126, 860-861
 - variable parameters, 112, 153, 860-861
- Index type, 112, 126, 860-861
- IndexerNameAttribute, 860, 861, 895-899
- Indexers, 808-810, 833, 860-864
- Indexes
 - arrays, 115-116, 120, 123-128
 - dictionaries, 832-836, 845-849
 - list searches, 833, 843, 860
 - sorted collections, 113, 682, 832-837
- IndexOf() method, 121-122, 760, 842
- IndexOutOfRangeException type, 126-127, 600-603, 760
- Indirection operators for pointers, 511, 1097-1102, 1103
- Inequality
 - floating-point types, 53-56, 145-148
 - with null, 82, 98-99, 173-175
 - operators, 138-139, 167-170, 548
- Inextensible classes, 396-397, 461-463, 482
- Inferences for generic methods, 651, 660-666, 892
- Infinite recursion errors, 246, 261-263, 802
- Infinity value, 54-57, 139, 148
- Infix notation for binary operators, 138-142, 149, 153
- Information hiding in encapsulation, 314-316, 394, 476
- Inheritance
 - abstract classes, 385-386, 410-411, 414
 - base class overriding. *See* Base class overriding

- casting in, 85, 386, 390-391
- constraints, 386, 656, 660-662
- definitions, 294-297, 385-386, 599
- derivation. *See* Derivation
- exception classes, 280, 599-601, 605
- interfaces, 443-445, 458, 461-463
- is operator, 386, 548, 599
- overview, 294-297, 385-386, 599
- System.Object class in, 294-295, 299, 418
- value types, 96, 134, 487-489
- Initial section in for loops, 188-195, 863, 1021-1024
- Initialization, 338-341, 346, 367
- Initializers
 - collections, 339, 754-759, 832-834
 - constructors, 334, 338-341, 344-346
 - object, 338-341, 346, 757
- Initializing
 - anonymous type arrays, 118, 754, 797-805
 - arrays, 112, 115-120, 135
 - attributes, 881, 896-900, 903
 - dictionaries, 680, 832-834, 845-849
 - fields, 334, 338-340, 346
 - loop counters values, 150, 193, 1043-1045
 - static members, 363, 367-370, 373
 - structs, 338, 510-511, 1083-1084
- Inner classes, 376-378, 394, 475
- Inner joins
 - description, 780-784, 788-789, 809
 - one-to-many relationships, 780-784, 788-789, 809
 - performing, 780-784, 788-789, 809
- InnerException property, 616, 617-618, 960
- InnerExceptions property
 - aggregate exceptions, 616-618, 959-960, 1028
 - asynchronous requests, 616-618, 958-960, 1028
 - error handling, 601, 616-618, 960
 - parallel loops, 960, 1028-1032, 1035-1039
 - tasks, 616-618, 958-961, 1028
- INotifyCompletion interface, 461-463, 1003, 1006
- INotifyPropertyChanged interface, 181, 463, 732
- Input, 28-31, 199, 227-228
- Insert() method, 305, 463, 758
- Inserting dictionary items, 758, 832-836, 845-849
- Instance fields
 - accessing, 306, 330, 338
 - declaring, 302-304, 307, 360
 - description, 302-303, 338, 363
 - initializing, 338-340, 346, 367
- Instance members
 - arrays, 129-130, 302, 790
 - strings, 69, 129, 514
 - working with, 302, 305-307, 475
- Instantiation
 - arrays, 115-120, 129, 790
 - classes, 298-299, 410, 568
 - defined, 299, 338, 360
 - delegates, 683, 693-694, 727
 - generics, 623, 677-679, 892
- Integers and int type
 - characteristics, 56, 96, 144-145
 - characters, 64-66, 87-88, 144
 - conversions, 56, 84-88, 144
 - default, 56-57, 87, 640
 - description, 56-57, 84, 144
 - enums, 487, 533-535, 1091
 - overflow, 55-56, 86-88, 620
 - vs. strings, 84, 88, 144
- Integrated development environment (IDE)
 - debugging support, 4, 7, 572
 - Visual Studio 2019, 1-4, 7, 572
- IntelliSense feature, 44, 572, 812
- Interlocked class
 - increment and decrement operators, 150-151, 154, 1056-1057
 - working with, 1056, 1061, 1076
- internal access modifier
 - description, 315-316, 384, 565-566
 - interface refactoring, 445-446, 455, 465
 - on type declarations, 316, 565-567, 1119
- Interoperability, 441-445, 463, 1119-1120

- InteropServices class
 - SafeHandle, 1077-1081, 1087-1088, 1090-1092
 - unmanaged exceptions, 610, 1077-1078, 1085-1087
 - Interpolation of strings, 31-32, 67-71, 143
 - Intersect() operator, 167-170, 771, 780
 - into clause in query expressions, 809-812, 823-827, 831
 - IntPtr class, 96, 523-524, 1081
 - InvalidAddressException type, 612-614, 618-619, 1098
 - InvalidCastException type
 - description, 84-85, 390-391, 647-651
 - generics, 630, 638, 649-651
 - using, 85, 391, 648-651
 - InvalidOperationException type
 - catch blocks, 280-282, 605-606, 609-610
 - collections, 754-756, 759, 832-835
 - description, 649-651, 656, 662
 - null values, 99-100, 628-630, 656
 - tasks, 802, 975, 994
 - wrapped exceptions, 612-614, 618, 622
 - Invocation
 - base class constructors, 402, 410, 660
 - delegates, 693, 716, 727
 - dynamic, 716, 920-926, 931
 - referenced packages and projects, 557-562, 568, 1078
 - using statement, 702, 705, 716
 - Invoke() method
 - delegates, 733, 1078, 1090-1092
 - dynamic invocation, 733, 930-931, 1078
 - events, 727, 733, 753
 - IOException type, 466, 482, 617-619
 - IOrderedEnumerable<T> interface, 463, 833, 995-997
 - IProducerConsumerCollection<T> interface, 832-834, 995-997, 1069
 - IQueryable<T> interface
 - delegates, 463, 793-796, 833
 - query expressions, 793-796, 830, 833
 - queryable extensions, 463, 793-796, 833
 - is a kind of relationships, 295-297, 385-386, 781-782
 - is a relationship
 - abstract members, 302, 410-414, 456
 - classes, 295-296, 302, 385-386
 - derivation forms in, 296, 385-386, 389
 - IsCancellationRequested property, 963-969, 1030, 1038
 - IsCompleted property
 - multithreading, 940, 1043-1046, 1051
 - parallel loops, 1024, 1027-1032, 1035
 - IsDefined() method, 269, 463, 515
 - ISerializable interface, 456-458, 461-463, 617
 - IsGenericType property, 891, 892, 893
 - IsInvalid member, 324-325, 353, 440
 - Iterations
 - loops, 188, 192-194, 1021-1023
 - parallel. See Parallel iterations
 - Iterators
 - compiling, 765, 863-868, 877-878
 - defining, 863-868, 871-873, 878
 - escaping, 863-868, 871-873, 878
 - multiple, 760, 863-866, 871-873
 - origin, 863-868, 871-873, 878
 - recursive, 863-866, 872-873, 878
 - states, 763, 863-870, 873
 - syntax, 760, 863-868, 878
 - yielding values from, 863-873, 878
- ## J
- Jagged arrays
 - defining, 120, 123, 132
 - element assignment, 116-120, 123, 130-132
 - length, 120-125, 129-132
 - Java language vs
 - arrays, 112, 115-116, 120-122
 - exception specifiers, 599, 609-610, 622
 - filenames, 14, 17, 1114
 - generics, 623, 677, 681
 - implicit overriding, 455-457, 475, 485
 - import directive, 14, 193, 235-239

- inner classes, 475, 524, 710
- Main(), 14, 20-22, 245-246
- syntax similarities, 14, 193, 831
- virtual methods, 401, 455, 475
- JIT (just-in-time) compiler and jitting
 - CIL, 38-40, 1114-1116, 1121
 - description, 38-40, 1114-1116, 1121
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 1114, 1121
- Join operations
 - inner joins, 780, 784, 788-789
 - outer joins, 780, 784, 788-789
 - overview, 143, 216, 808-810
- Join() method
 - inner joins, 780-784, 788-789, 809
 - threads, 784, 943, 972-973
- Jump statements
 - break, 160-161, 200-201, 205-206
 - continue, 160-161, 193, 203-206
 - goto, 156, 200, 205-206
 - lambda expressions, 697-702, 705, 716-718
- Just-in-time (JIT) compiler and jitting
 - CIL, 38-40, 1114-1116, 1121
 - description, 38-40, 1114-1118, 1121
 - thread synchronization, 941, 973, 1121

K

- KeyNotFoundException type, 600-605, 618-619, 622
- Keys
 - dictionaries, 832-834, 845-849, 852
 - equality, 493-494, 515, 850-852
 - sorted collections, 832-837, 845, 852-854
- Keys property, 318-319, 333, 394-395
- KeyValuePair<TKey, TValue> class, 659, 845-849, 852-854
- Keywords
 - contextual, 15-16, 811, 843
 - as identifiers, 15-19, 298, 811-813
 - list of, 813, 835-837, 843
 - overview, 15, 113, 831-833
 - types, 49-50, 134, 813

L

- Labels for switch statements, 197-200, 205-206, 422-423
- Lambda calculus, 697-699, 702-707, 716-719
- Lambda expressions
 - asynchronous, 716-718, 725, 1008
 - as data, 716-720, 724-725, 796
 - deferred execution, 716-720, 725, 796
 - expression trees, 702, 716-720, 724-725
 - filters, 697-699, 716-720, 725
 - internals, 702, 716-720, 725
 - lazy loading, 704-706, 716-720, 725
 - notes and examples, 702-706, 716-718, 725
 - outer variables, 702, 710, 713-718
 - overview, 697-699, 716-720, 725
 - predicates, 697-699, 716-720, 775
 - purpose, 697-699, 716-718, 725
 - statement, 697-699, 702, 716-720
- LambdaExpression expression trees, 697-699, 702, 716-725
- Language Integrated Query (LINQ)
 - anonymous types, 463, 755, 796
 - collections, 463, 755, 831-833
 - deferred execution, 777, 796, 806
 - delegates, 463, 755, 796
 - extension methods, 463, 755, 796
 - with IEnumerable, 796, 1000, 1033-1034
 - parallel queries, 796, 823, 1033-1035
 - query expressions. See Query expressions
- Language interoperability, 17, 463, 1124
- Last in, 32, 194, 624
- LastIndexOf() method, 121-122, 125-127, 839
- Late binding with metadata, 575, 931-933, 1127
- Latency
 - async/await syntax, 985, 989-991, 1004-1008
 - asynchronous example, 933, 1003-1005, 1074
 - description, 933, 935-938, 1074
 - multithreading for, 933-934, 937-941, 973

- synchronous example, 933, 1003-1005, 1074-1076
- WPF example, 1003-1005, 1016, 1074
- Lazy initialization, 338-340, 346, 367
- LazyCancellation task continuation option, 951-953, 963-971, 1031
- Leaf asynchronous task-returning method, 975, 991-994, 1002-1008
- Left outer joins, 780-784, 788, 789
- Left-associative operators, 138-143, 149, 183-184
- Length
 - arrays, 115-116, 120-125, 129
 - strings, 69, 79-80, 129
- Length property, 79, 318-320, 333
- Less than signs (<)
 - generics, 638, 663-664, 677-678
 - overriding, 138-139, 167-170, 698
 - pointers, 138-139, 182-183, 1099-1103
 - relational operators, 138-139, 167-170, 425-426
 - shift operators, 138-139, 167-170, 183
 - XML, 35-37, 139, 572-574
- let clause, 166, 193, 820
- Libraries
 - BCL. See Base Class Library (BCL)
 - classes, 295, 557-559, 568
 - creating, 11, 557-559, 1113-1114
 - dependencies, 11, 557-564, 1113
 - referencing, 492, 557-564, 1126
 - TPL. See Task Parallel Library (TPL)
- Lifetime of captured outer variables, 248, 488-490, 710-716
- LIFO (last in, 121-122, 624, 854
- Line feeds
 - escape sequence, 65-67, 70-73, 78
 - newlines, 65-67, 70-72, 78
- Line numbers, 160, 213, 219-220
- Line-based statements in Visual Basic vs C#, 13-14, 70, 225
- Linked lists, 524, 624, 863
- LinkedList<T> class, 631-634, 832-837, 865
- LinkedListNode<T> class, 631-633, 667, 865-866
- LINQ, 794-796, 823, 1033-1034
- Liskov, 294-297, 443, 461-463
- List<T> class
 - overview, 631-634, 832-837
 - searches, 631-634, 833-837, 844
- Listeners for events, 737, 743-744, 753
- Lists
 - collections, 113, 790, 832-837
 - linked, 770, 782, 843
 - searching, 808-812, 833, 843
 - sorted, 685-686, 821, 839-841
- Literal values
 - characters, 57, 64-69, 144
 - default, 57, 510, 640
 - overview, 57, 63, 488-489
 - strings, 57, 66-71, 425
- Load() method, 314, 342, 580
- Loading
 - with files, 10, 770, 1122-1123
 - lazy, 314, 367, 597-598
- Local functions
 - .NET frameworks, 44-47, 233, 1110-1113
- Local variables
 - anonymous types, 710, 797-800, 803
 - assigning values to, 25-27, 94, 106
 - declaring, 25-27, 164-165, 193
 - implicitly typed, 102, 249, 798-799
 - scope, 164-165, 193, 233
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 1045-1046, 1073
 - types, 25, 488-491, 798-799
 - working with, 164-165, 233, 710
- Localized applications, 39, 557, 1120-1123
- Locals, 164-165, 233, 714-716
- lock keyword
 - thread synchronization, 1046, 1050-1053, 1060-1061
 - value types, 528, 813, 1050-1053

Locks
 deadlocks, 941-943, 974, 1060-1062
 thread synchronization, 941-942, 1041, 1060-1061
 value types, 487-488, 528, 545

Logical operators
 Boolean, 63, 167-171, 184-185
 overriding, 167-170, 548, 552-554
 working with, 143, 167-171, 184

Lollipops, 463, 624, 716

long type
 characteristics, 53, 88, 1125
 conversions, 53, 84-85, 88-89

Long-running tasks, 944, 970-975, 1026

LongRunning task continuation option
 delays, 969-971, 1026, 1074
 description, 951-954, 970-971, 1026
 TPL performance, 944, 973, 1026

Loop variables in lambda expressions, 701-702, 710, 715-716

Loops
 for, 188-194, 1021-1023
 foreach, 194, 760, 864
 parallel iterations, 1020-1023, 1032, 1035-1039
 while and do/while, 150, 188-194, 204

LowestBreakIteration property, 875, 878, 1030-1032

M

Machine code, 3, 38-40, 1114

Main()
 names, 17, 20-21, 242-245
 namespaces, 221, 245, 568-570
 overloading, 21-22, 243-246, 342
 overview, 21-22, 243-246, 887-889
 parameters. See Parameters
 partial, 21-22, 243-246, 379-380
 passing as arguments, 21-22, 243-245, 258
 publish-subscribe pattern, 727, 737, 753
 recursion, 22, 243-246, 261-263
 refactoring into, 21-22, 227, 243-245
 resolution, 21-22, 227, 243-246
 return values, 21-22, 243-245, 248
 scope, 21-22, 164, 243-247
 vs. statements, 14, 225, 245-247
 static members, 21-22, 243-245, 1071-1072
 strings, 17, 21-22, 243-245
 structs, 21-22, 243-247, 887-889
 syntax, 14, 20-22, 243-247
 this keyword, 21-22, 245-246, 307-309
 type inferences, 22, 245-247, 666
 types, 21-22, 49, 243-247
 using directive, 21, 237-240, 243-247
 virtual, 21-22, 243-245, 475

Main() method
 async, 22, 991, 1003-1005
 declaring, 20-22, 227, 243-246
 description, 20-22, 227, 243-245
 Java vs. C#, 14, 20-22, 243-246
 multiple, 22, 227, 243-246
 return values and parameters, 21-22, 243-245, 248
 __makeref keyword, 19-22, 227, 257-258

Managed code, 38-39, 1077-1078, 1120-1121

Managed execution, 38-39, 1116, 1120-1121

Manifests in CLI, 5-7, 1106-1109, 1121-1122

ManualResetEvent class, 750, 1003-1005, 1064-1068

ManualResetEventSlim class, 1003-1005, 1064-1067, 1068

Many-to-many relationships in join
 operations, 780-784, 788-789, 809

Masks, 184-187, 203, 843

Matching caller variables with parameters, 248-251, 269-270, 895

Max() function, 26-28, 542, 663-665

MaxDegreeOfParallelism property, 318, 1030-1031, 1034-1039

MaybeNull attribute, 349-350, 354, 357

MaybeNullWhen attribute, 354-357, 895-897, 914

Me keyword, 15, 307-309, 811-813

Mechanism relationships, 295-296, 456, 781-782

- Members
 - abstract classes, 410-411, 414, 453
 - base class overriding, 398, 401-402, 407-410
 - class variables, 298, 302, 363
 - classes, 298-299, 302, 568
 - default interface, 444-445, 467-469, 484
 - dynamic invocation, 920-923, 926-931
 - explicit and implicit implementation, 333, 453-457, 485
 - static. See Static members
- MemberwiseClone() method, 338, 376, 508-509
- Memory
 - boxing, 488-490, 523-524, 1118
 - finalizers, 581-584, 596, 1087
 - generics, 631-634, 681, 1118
 - multithreading complexity, 934, 937-942, 973
 - objects, 295, 363, 576-578
 - reference types, 93-96, 491-492, 1097
- Memory<T>, 95-96, 300, 489-490
- Metadata
 - attributes, 881, 896-898, 1127
 - CIL, 333, 882, 1124-1127
 - CLI, 4-7, 896, 1109-1111
 - reflection, 881-883, 931, 1127
 - XML, 35-37, 571-574, 928
- Method groups for delegates, 689-693, 727, 735
- Method invocations, 224, 733, 816-818
- MethodCallExpression expression trees, 716-725, 830-831
- MethodImplAttribute, 354, 897-899, 914
- MethodImplOptions class, 461-465, 888-890, 896
- MethodInfo class
 - delegates, 683-684, 689-691, 694-695
 - dynamic invocation, 920-921, 924, 928-931
 - reflection, 882-883, 886-890, 931
- Methods
 - anonymous, 704-706, 797-803
 - arguments, 220, 224, 243
 - attributes, 881, 896-901, 932
 - call stacks, 246, 624-626, 631-634
 - called during construction, 338, 341, 344-346
 - casting in, 84-85, 390-391, 421
 - constraints, 651-652, 656-657, 660-663
 - constructors. See Constructors
 - declaring, 291, 298, 689
 - description, 227, 291, 444
 - expression bodied, 231, 716-719, 723-725
 - extension, 371-372, 396, 461-463
 - external, 330, 562-565, 1078
 - generics, 623, 631-635, 664
 - instance, 306, 363, 475
 - interface refactoring, 444-445, 461-464, 683
- Microsoft
 - assemblies, 38, 43-45, 1122-1123
 - CLI implementation, 4-7, 1109, 1110-1112
 - description, 2-4, 7, 564
 - garbage collection, 576-578, 595, 1115-1118
 - versioning, 7, 46-47, 1109-1111
- Microsoft Silverlight compiler, 3-4, 44, 1114
- Min() function, 138-139, 368, 665
- Minus signs (-)
 - compound assignment, 138-141, 149, 183
 - decrement operator, 138-139, 149-153, 183
 - delegates, 138-139, 735-736, 946
 - identifier names, 17-19, 138-139, 150
 - overriding, 86-87, 138-139, 182
 - precedence, 138-139, 140-142, 182
 - referent member access, 138-139, 330, 1102-1103
 - subtraction, 138-139, 148-150, 182-183
 - unary operator, 138-139, 150, 170
- Modules
 - attributes, 881, 897-900, 932
 - CLI, 4-7, 1109-1113, 1121-1122
 - dependencies, 557-564, 1113, 1122-1123
- Monitor class
 - locks, 1046, 1050-1053, 1061-1062
 - thread synchronization, 1046, 1061, 1076

Mono .NET frameworks, 44-47, 1109-1113, 1128
 Mono compiler, 38-40, 1114, 1121
 Move() method, 529-530, 626, 762
 MoveNext() method
 duck typing, 760, 762, 765
 iterators, 760-762, 865-871
 MoveNextAsync() method, 762, 994-1000, 1003-1005
 MTAs (multithreaded apartments), 944, 973, 1075
 Multicast delegates
 description, 693-695, 727, 738
 internals, 726-728, 738, 739
 publish-subscribe pattern. See Publish-subscribe pattern
 MulticastDelegate class
 constraints, 693-695, 727, 738
 internals, 693-695, 726-727, 738
 Multidimensional arrays, 115-120, 123, 130-132
 Multiple .NET frameworks, 11, 44-47, 1109-1113
 Multiple constraints, 651-656, 660-663, 843
 Multiple inheritance
 C++, 386, 443, 599
 interfaces, 443-445, 458, 461-463
 Multiple interfaces for single classes, 443-445, 461-463, 637-638
 Multiple Iterators, 863-866, 871-873, 1023
 Multiple Main() methods, 21-22, 227, 243-247
 Multiple searches in lists, 828, 843, 844-848
 Multiple selection for query expressions, 808-812, 823-828, 831
 Multiple threads synchronization, 941-943,

1041, 1046
 Multiple type parameters in generics, 635, 642-646, 663-664
 Multiplication
 binary operator, 138-141, 149, 183-185
 compound assignment, 140-142, 149, 552
 shift operator, 140-142, 149, 183
 Multithreaded apartments (MTAs), 944, 973, 1075
 Multithreading
 asynchronous tasks. See Asynchronous tasks
 atomic operations, 940, 941-942, 1061
 canceling tasks, 937, 963-968, 1036
 deadlocks, 937, 940-943, 973
 description, 932, 936-938, 973
 disposability of tasks, 937, 973-975, 1013-1014
 issues, 937, 940-943, 973
 jargon, 934-938, 941, 973
 long-running tasks, 937, 944, 973-975
 memory model complexity, 934-937, 940-943, 973
 overview, 934-937, 973, 1041
 performance considerations, 934, 937-941, 973
 purpose, 934-938, 941, 973
 race conditions, 940-942, 1041, 1046
 Threading class, 932, 936-937, 972-973
 Mutable value types, 487-489, 530, 545
 Mutex class, 1050-1053, 1061-1063, 1076
 MutexSecurity class, 1051-1055, 1060-1063, 1076
 Mutual exclusion in deadlocks, 974, 1056, 1060-1062

N

Name/value pairs for dictionaries, 108, 758, 845-849

- Named arguments, 224, 269-270, 289
- Named parameters
 - attributes, 881, 895-897, 906-909
 - changing names of, 269-270, 289, 383
- nameof operator
 - arguments, 269, 289, 548
 - properties, 318, 333, 548
 - working with, 143, 167-169, 548
- nameof() operator
 - .NET frameworks, 175, 289, 548
- Names
 - ambiguity, 17-18, 241, 567-568
 - class definitions, 221, 298, 567-570
 - collisions, 17-18, 221, 568
 - constant values, 57, 373, 425
 - constructor parameters, 228, 270, 344-345
 - constructors, 17-18, 221, 568
 - enums, 533-535, 538-542, 1091
 - fields, 303, 307-309, 323
 - identifiers, 17-19, 783-785, 895
 - indexers, 126, 833, 860-863
 - local variables, 164-165, 233, 309
 - methods, 221, 308-309, 568
 - scope, 164, 221, 567-570
 - tuples, 104-108, 111, 807
 - type parameters, 635, 642, 663-664
 - variables, 25-26, 106-107, 308-309
- Namespaces
 - aliasing, 221-222, 241, 568-570
 - defining, 221, 235-239, 568-570
 - methods, 221-222, 235, 567-570
 - nesting, 221, 235, 568-570
 - using directive, 222, 235-240, 568-570
- NaN (Not a Number) value, 82, 139, 146-148
- Native code, 38-39, 1114-1116, 1120
- NDoc tool, 4-7, 560-561, 576
- Negation operator (!), 138-139, 168-175, 187
- Negative infinity value, 86-87, 139, 148
- Negative numbers notation, 138-139, 148, 182
- Negative zero value, 139, 148, 182
- Nested items
 - classes, 387, 394, 638
 - delegates, 691-693, 716, 727
 - generic types, 631-633, 636-638, 643-646
 - if statements, 158-163, 166, 205
 - iterators, 760, 862-866, 872-873
 - namespaces, 221, 235, 567-570
 - using directive, 234, 237-241, 843
- .NET Compact Framework, 44-47, 1109-1114, 1128
- .NET Core, 4-5, 46-47, 1109-1113
- .NET Micro Framework, 44-47, 1109-1114
- Net namespace, 221, 235, 567-570
- .NET Native feature, 47, 1120, 1127-1128
- .NET Standard version, 4, 45-47, 1109-1113
- new modifier in base class overriding, 393, 397-398, 401-407
- new operator
 - arrays, 126, 132, 143
 - constructors, 143, 335-336, 511
 - objects, 143, 335, 511
 - projections, 143, 800, 808-810
 - value types, 511, 545, 548
- Newlines
 - escape sequence, 65-67, 70-73, 78
 - preprocessor directives, 70-72, 207-209, 213-214
 - variations, 23, 70-73, 78
- NGEN tool, 4, 560-561, 1116-1118
- No preemption condition in deadlocks, 940-943, 974, 1060-1061
- NodeType property expression trees, 431, 716-720, 723-725
- None task continuation option, 951-957, 971, 1031
- Normal continuation, 203-204, 825-827, 950-951
- Normal form for parameters, 224, 228, 267-270
- Normalized data, 53-58, 148, 782
- Not a Number (NaN) value, 82, 139, 148
- NOT operators

- inequality, 138-139, 167-170, 548
 - logical, 167-171, 184, 552
 - Notifications for thread synchronization, 1041, 1061, 1076
 - NotImplementedException type, 601-604, 618, 622
 - NotNull attribute, 354, 897-900, 914
 - nonnull constraints, 82, 348-350, 654-656
 - NotNullIfNotNull attribute, 286-288, 350, 354-356
 - NotNullWhen attribute, 354-355, 906-908, 914-919
 - NotOnCanceled task continuation option, 951-953, 963-971, 1031
 - NotOnFaulted task continuation option, 951-953, 956-958, 961
 - NotOnRanToCompletion task continuation option, 951-957, 961, 1031
 - nowarn preprocessor directive option, 207-214, 269, 1094
 - NuGet packages
 - invoking, 44, 559-564, 1116
 - references, 44, 236, 558-564
 - referencing, 44, 236, 558-564
 - Null assignments to reference types, 82-83, 96, 100-101
 - Null character escape sequence, 64-68, 82, 173-175
 - Null checks, 98-100, 173-175, 346-350
 - null modifier, 82-83, 97, 173-175
 - null references, 82-83, 100-101, 173-175
 - null values
 - checking for, 97-98, 173-175, 350
 - collections, 682, 754-756, 863
 - dereferencing, 82-83, 97-100, 173-175
 - pointers, 82-83, 173, 1097-1099
 - programming with, 82, 97-98, 173-175
 - publish-subscribe pattern, 727, 732-733, 743
 - strings, 82-83, 173, 288
 - types allowing, 82-83, 97, 100-101
 - Null-conditional operator
 - dereferencing operations, 98-99, 173-178, 1102
 - null checks, 82, 98, 173-178
 - thread synchronization, 175, 941-942, 1056
 - working with, 98-99, 171-178
 - event handlers, 98, 173-180, 733
 - Nullable attributes, 354, 881, 897-899
 - Nullable values
 - array initial values, 116-120, 135, 805
 - default values, 82, 269, 640
 - description, 82-83, 505, 656
 - example, 82, 173, 629
 - struct constraints, 505, 629, 654-656
 - Nullable<T> type, 630, 649-651, 655-656
 - NullReferenceException type
 - delegates, 99-101, 285, 603
 - dereferencing null values, 82-83, 97-100, 173-175
 - description, 97-101, 285, 603
 - reference type nullability, 82-83, 97-101, 347
 - thread synchronization, 1014, 1053-1054, 1060-1061
 - Numeric types
 - decimal, 53-59, 145
 - floating-point, 53-58, 145-148
 - hexadecimal notation, 53-56, 59-61, 144
 - integers, 53-59, 88, 144
 - literal values, 53-59, 63, 88
 - round-trip formatting, 54-58, 62, 145-146
- ## O
- Object class
 - derivation from, 299, 386-389, 418
 - dynamic objects, 293-295, 299, 920
 - Object-oriented programming
 - encapsulation, 293-295, 314, 394
 - inheritance, 293-295, 386, 599
 - overview, 293-295, 302, 441
 - polymorphism, 294-297, 415, 441-443
 - Objects
 - associated data, 301-302, 363, 781-782
 - CTS, 617, 681, 1125-1126
 - defined, 293-295, 299, 302

- dynamic programming, 441, 920, 926
- expression trees, 716-720, 723-725, 831
- filtering, 800, 808-810, 820
- identity vs. equality, 493-494, 515-517, 850
- initializers, 338-340, 346, 754-759
- member overriding, 398, 418, 513
- resurrecting, 576-578, 596, 1118
- ObsoleteAttribute, 897-900, 905-908, 914-915
- OfType<T>() operator, 647, 800, 885
- One-to-many relationships
 - example, 463, 781-782, 843
 - inner joins, 780-784, 788-789, 809
- OnlyOnCanceled task continuation option, 953, 963-969, 1030-1031
- OnlyOnFaulted task continuation option, 951-953, 956-958, 961
- OnlyOnRanToCompletion task continuation option, 951-957, 969-971, 1031
- Operands
 - description, 137-143, 184-185
 - evaluation, 138-143, 149, 184-185
- Operational polymorphism, 294-297, 415, 443
- OperationCanceledException type, 963-969, 1030, 1038
- operator keyword, 138-143, 149, 167-169
- Operator overriding, 398-399, 407-408, 548
- Operators
 - assignment, 139-143, 149-151, 552
 - associativity, 140-143, 216, 552
 - binary, 138-143, 167, 184
 - bitwise, 169-170, 183-187, 552
 - characters in arithmetic operations, 138-143, 149, 550
 - compound assignment, 140-143, 149, 552
 - concatenation, 141-142, 143, 149
 - conditional, 137, 163, 166-172
 - constant expressions and locals, 153-154, 714-716, 719
 - constraints, 143, 651-656, 660-663
 - decrement, 138-139, 150-154, 1044
 - delegates, 726-727, 735-736, 743
 - description, 137-139, 143, 167
 - evaluation, 138, 141-143, 149
 - floating-point equality, 145-148, 167-168, 548
 - increment, 139, 143, 149-154
 - logical, 138, 167-170, 184
 - with null, 98, 173-178, 286
 - null-coalescing, 98, 173-178, 286
 - null-conditional, 98, 169-178, 733
 - null-forgiving, 139, 143, 173-175
 - overriding, 407-408, 418, 548
 - overview, 143, 216, 833
 - precedence, 138-143, 149, 216
 - relational and equality, 167-169, 425, 548
 - shift, 138-143, 183, 216
 - special floating-point characteristics, 54-55, 138, 143-148
 - thread-safe, 972-973, 1057, 1061
 - unary, 138-143, 150, 719
- Optional parameters, 267-270, 343-345, 701
- OR operations
 - bitwise operators, 169-170, 183, 184-187
 - constraints, 143, 167-170, 184
 - enums, 167-169, 184-185, 540-541
 - logical operators, 167-170, 184-185, 552
- orderby clause, 809-812, 820-823, 831
- OrderBy() method, 696-698, 777-779, 821
- OrderByDescending() method, 698, 777-779, 821
- Ordering collections, 113, 754-756, 832-837
- out argument, 224, 269-270, 603
- out parameters
 - conversions, 253, 392, 708
 - properties, 253, 331-333, 896
- out type parameter modifier, 651, 663, 672-674
- Outer joins, 780-784, 788-789, 809

- Outer variables in lambda expressions, 702-704, 710-711, 715-718
- OutOfMemoryException type, 600-604, 622, 1118
- Output, 6, 404, 723
- Output parameters, 6, 404, 723
- Overflow
 - C# vs. C++, 84-86, 609, 1077
 - managed execution, 39, 86, 1116-1121
 - type safety, 86-87, 490, 1057
 - unsafe code, 1077-1078, 1093-1095, 1104
- Overflow of integers, 86-87, 148, 620-621
- OverflowException type, 86, 601, 618-622
- Overloading
 - constructors, 336-338, 341-345
 - methods, 260, 264-266, 417-418
- override keyword, 398-403, 455, 661
- Overriding
 - assignment operators, 149-151, 548, 552
 - Base class. See Base class overriding
 - binary operators, 138-141, 548, 552
 - comparison operators, 167-168, 548-549, 552-554
 - conversion operators, 391-392, 548, 552-555
 - Equals(), 515-519, 548, 851
 - GetHashCode(), 408, 515-520, 851-852
 - logical operators, 184, 548, 552-554
 - methods, 396-398, 417-418, 513
 - object members, 398, 418, 513
 - operators, 167, 548, 552-555
 - ToString(), 408, 513-516, 804
 - unary operators, 138-139, 548, 552

P

- P/Invoke
 - vs. ref, 1077-1078, 1082, 1087-1092
 - referent member access, 921, 1077-1078, 1087-1092
 - stacks, 1077-1078, 1082, 1086-1092
 - unsafe code, 1077-1078, 1086-1087, 1090-1092
- Packages, 221, 557-562, 568

- Pair<T> type
 - iterators, 642, 866, 869-871
 - struct vs. class, 636-637, 642-644, 874
- Parallel class, 934, 1020-1025, 1033-1039
- Parallel iterations
 - loops, 1020-1023, 1032, 1035-1039
 - overview, 1021-1023, 1030-1032, 1035-1039
 - performance, 1020-1023, 1032, 1035-1039
 - PLINQ queries, 825-827, 1023, 1034-1039
- Parallel LINQ (PLINQ)
 - canceling queries, 796, 1033-1035, 1038
 - parallel queries, 796, 823, 1033-1039
 - running queries, 796, 823, 1033-1039
- Parallel loops
 - breaking, 1020-1023, 1028, 1031-1032
 - canceling, 1023, 1027-1032, 1035
 - exception handling, 1023, 1028-1032, 1035-1039
 - for, 1020-1024, 1035-1039
 - foreach, 1023-1025, 1028, 1035-1039
 - options, 1020-1023, 1031, 1035-1039
 - performance, 1020-1024, 1035-1039
- Parallel programming, 934, 1020-1023, 1035-1039
- ParallelEnumerable class, 772, 1000, 1033-1039
- ParallelLoopResult class, 1022-1024, 1028-1032, 1035-1039
- ParallelLoopState class, 1023, 1030-1032, 1035-1039
- ParallelOptions class, 972, 1029-1031, 1034-1039
- ParallelQuery<T> class, 1023, 1028, 1034-1039
- ParameterExpression expression trees, 716-725, 830
- Parameterized generic types, 663-664, 677, 892
- Parameters
 - anonymous methods, 684, 704-706, 802-803
 - arrays, 224, 259-260, 664

- catch blocks, 281-282, 601, 605-606
- constraints. See Constraints
- constructors, 338, 344-345, 903
- declaring, 224, 228, 267-270
- events, 224, 743-750, 753
- extension methods, 371-372, 396, 461-463
- finalizers, 341, 581-584, 590-591
- generics, 635, 664, 677
- in, 224, 228, 664
- indexers, 126-127, 833, 860-861
- lambda expressions, 697-701, 704-706, 716-720
- Main(), 21-22, 243-246, 887-889
- matching caller variables with, 248-249, 269-271, 918
- method resolution, 228, 269-271, 701
- methods, 220, 224, 228
- optional, 267-270, 343, 896
- out, 6, 253-254, 358
- reference types, 96, 134, 1097
- return by reference, 224, 248-256
- statement lambdas, 697-702, 705, 716-718
- types, 134, 642-645, 664
- value, 224, 267-269, 489
- Parent types, 134, 296-297, 386
- Parentheses ()
 - casts, 85, 141-142, 427
 - collection initializers, 339, 427, 754-757
 - declaration lists, 115-116, 193, 427
 - lambda expressions, 697-706, 716-718
 - logical operators, 141-142, 166-170, 427
 - operator precedence, 141-142, 216, 427
 - query expressions, 718, 809-812, 831
 - tuples, 106-108, 427, 803
- Parse() method
 - conversions, 88-91, 290, 538-539
 - enum, 90-91, 538-539, 888-890
 - FlagsAttribute, 539, 543, 910-911
 - metadata, 539, 888-890, 931
- Parsing types, 885, 888-890, 1125
- Partial classes
 - defining, 379-384, 463, 476
 - methods, 371, 379-384, 462-463
- Partial interface refactoring, 383-384, 445, 461-465
- Partial methods
 - description, 379-384, 396, 462-463
 - interface refactoring, 381-384, 463, 683
- PascalCase
 - description, 18, 20, 323
 - field names, 18, 308-309, 323
 - interfaces, 18, 444-446, 463-464
 - namespaces, 18, 221, 568-570
 - properties, 18, 323, 333
 - tuples, 104-108, 435, 807
 - type names, 18, 50, 323
- Pass-by-reference, 96, 249-251, 491-492
- Passed by reference variables, 248-251, 488, 491-492
- Passed by value arguments, 224, 260, 269-270
- Passing
 - anonymous methods, 684, 704-706, 800-803
 - arrays, 112, 115-120, 135
 - command-line arguments, 224, 243, 886-889
 - delegates, 693-696, 716, 727
 - instances, 310, 360, 363
 - method return values, 220, 224-225, 254
 - methods as arguments, 218-220, 224, 260
 - null values, 82, 173-175, 350
 - out parameters, 224, 228, 267-270
 - read-only references, 326, 374-376, 507
 - this keyword, 15, 291, 307-310
 - values to methods, 218-220, 224, 228
 - variables by reference, 249-251, 255, 492
 - variables to methods, 218-220, 228, 291
- Peek() method, 306, 317-319, 853-855
- Percent signs (%)
 - compound assignment, 27, 139-142, 149
 - overriding, 59, 142-143, 398
 - precedence, 139-142, 153, 216
 - remainder operation, 138-142, 170, 184
- Performance
 - CLI, 4-7, 1109-1111, 1121
 - hash codes, 517-521, 524, 851-852
 - multithreading, 934-941, 973, 1041
 - parallel iterations, 1020-1023, 1031, 1035-1039

- Periods (
 - fully qualified method names, 50-53, 228, 383-384
 - nested namespaces, 51, 221, 567-570
 - null-conditional operator, 98-99, 173-179, 863
- Pi calculations, 6, 948, 1020-1024
- Platform interoperability
 - delegates, 683, 738, 1120
 - overview, 443, 1113, 1120
 - P/Invoke, 1077-1078, 1086-1092, 1120
 - pointers and addresses, 1077-1081, 1097, 1104
- Platform Invoke (P/Invoke)
 - description, 1077-1078, 1086-1092, 1120
 - error handling, 1077-1078, 1085-1092
 - external functions, 1077-1078, 1079, 1086-1092
 - function pointers, 1077-1080, 1086-1088, 1090-1092
 - parameter data types, 1077-1084, 1090-1092
 - references, 44, 1077-1078, 1086-1092
 - SafeHandle, 1077-1081, 1087-1092
 - sequential layout, 1077-1078, 1083, 1090-1092
 - wrappers, 44, 1077-1078, 1086-1092
- Platform portability
 - CLI, 5, 1109-1113, 1119
 - managed execution, 39, 47, 1119-1121
 - preprocessor directives for, 207-211, 214, 1119-1120
- PLINQ, 463, 823, 1034-1035
- Plus signs (+)
 - addition, 138-139, 142-143, 149-150
 - characters, 66, 138-139, 143-144
 - compound assignment, 139-142, 149, 552
 - delegates, 139, 736, 946
 - increment operator, 139, 143, 149-153
 - overriding, 139, 142-143, 182
 - precedence, 138-143, 149, 216
 - strings, 66-67, 139, 143
 - unary operator, 138, 139, 149-150
- Pointers
 - assigning, 95-96, 1097-1099, 1102-1103
 - declaring, 95, 1096-1103
 - dereferencing, 95, 1096-1103
 - fixing data, 95, 1096-1102
 - function, 1090-1092, 1096-1104
- Polling tasks, 944, 963-965, 973-975
- Polyfill code, 522-524, 1104, 1118-1120
- Polymorphism
 - abstract classes, 297, 414-415, 443
 - interfaces, 415, 443-445, 481
 - operational, 294-297, 415, 443
 - overview, 294-297, 415, 443
 - pattern matching, 415, 433, 438
 - with protected interface members, 415, 443-445, 475-476
- Pools
 - temporary, 490, 973-974, 1068
 - threads, 935-937, 944, 972-973
- Pop() method, 624, 631-633, 853-855
- positional
 - switch statements, 197, 200, 428
- Positive infinity value, 86-87, 139, 148
- Positive zero value, 139, 148, 182
- Postfix operators, 138-143, 149, 153
- Precedence of operators, 138-142, 153, 216
- Precision of floating-point types, 53-58, 92, 145-148
- Predefined attributes, 881, 897-900, 914
- Predefined types, 49-50, 53, 134
- Predicates
 - delegates, 690, 716, 767
 - filters, 767, 808-810, 820
 - lambdas, 697-703, 716-720, 775
- PreferFairness task continuation option, 953-957, 1026, 1031
- Prefix operators, 138-143, 149-150, 153
- Prefixes for hexadecimal notation, 17-19, 59-61, 66-67
- Preprocessor directives
 - excluding and including code, 207-214
 - line numbers, 207-214
 - list of, 207-214
 - nullable references, 83, 100-102, 214
 - purpose, 207-209, 210-214

- symbols, 207-214
- visual code editors, 4, 7, 207-214
- private access modifier
 - description, 314-316, 330, 566
 - inheritance, 314-316, 393-394, 566
 - interface refactoring, 444-446, 455, 683
 - nested classes, 314-317, 376-378, 394
- private internal access modifier, 314-316, 330, 565-566
- Private members for information hiding, 314-317, 393-394, 566
- private protected access modifier, 314-316, 330-331, 566
- private protected modifier, 315-316, 330-331, 566
- Procedural programming, 188, 217, 441
- Process class
 - multithreading, 934-938, 943, 973
 - notifications, 737, 753, 1010
- Processes, 933-938, 975, 1009
- ProcessExit events, 590-591, 594-595, 1010
- Processor-bound latency, 933, 934-942, 973
- Projections
 - anonymous types, 707, 797-805
 - collections, 800, 808-810, 815
 - query expressions, 808-810, 815, 831
- Projects
 - creating, 10, 571, 808-810
 - invoking, 245, 557-562, 808-810
 - referencing, 134, 557-562, 808-810
- Properties
 - attributes, 333, 881, 896-903
 - automatically implemented. *See* Automatically implemented properties
 - calculated, 318, 322, 333
 - declaring, 298, 333, 896-897
 - getters and setters, 317-322, 326, 330-333
 - guidelines, 330, 333, 896-897
 - interface refactoring, 445-446, 458, 638
 - internals, 333, 367, 394
 - lazy loading, 333, 367, 597-598
 - nameof operator, 289, 548, 894
 - overriding, 398-399, 407-408, 458
 - overview, 113, 134, 333
 - pattern matching, 318, 423-424, 431-438
 - read-only and write-only, 326, 374-376, 506-507
 - retrieving, 319-320, 333, 883
 - static, 363, 367-370, 373
 - strings, 143, 333, 896-897
 - structs, 504-506, 510-511, 1083-1084
 - unallowed parameter values, 325-326, 348-350, 621
 - with validation, 322-325, 333, 338
- PropertyChanged event, 181, 745-748, 752-753
- PropertyInfo class
 - attributes, 333, 888-890, 901-903
 - dynamic invocation, 695, 883-890, 928
- protected access modifier
 - description, 314-316, 330, 566-567
 - inheritance, 315-316, 386, 566
 - interface refactoring, 444-446, 455, 476
- protected interface members, 444-446, 453-458, 475-476
- protected internal access modifier, 314-316, 330-331, 565-566
- public access modifier
 - description, 315-316, 330, 566-567
 - interface refactoring, 444-446, 455, 464-465
 - on type declarations, 315-316, 330, 565-567
- Public constants, 154-155, 373, 425
- publish command, 4-7, 10-12, 560-561
- Publish-subscribe pattern
 - delegate invocation, 727, 743, 753
 - delegate operators, 727, 743, 753
 - encapsulation, 727, 743, 753
 - error handling, 739-740, 743, 753
 - hooking up publishers and subscribers, 727, 743, 753
 - method returns and pass-by-reference, 727, 741-743, 753

- multicast delegate internals, 727, 737-739, 753
- null checks, 173-175, 180, 424
- publishers, 727, 743, 753
- subscriber methods, 727, 743, 753
- Pulse() method, 1016-1017, 1049, 1067
- Pure virtual functions, 400-401, 418, 475
- Push() method, 624, 631-633, 853-855

Q

- Quantums, 54-55, 933, 938-940
- Queries, 808-812, 815, 831-833
- Query continuation clauses, 809-812, 823-828, 831
- Query expressions
 - deferred execution, 777, 796, 831
 - distinct members, 809-812, 823, 828-831
 - filters, 718, 808-812, 831
 - grouping, 809-811, 823-828, 831
 - introduction, 718, 808-812, 831
 - as method invocations, 718-719, 808-811, 830-831
 - overview, 808-812, 823, 831
 - projections, 808, 810-812, 815
 - query continuation clauses, 809-812, 823-828, 831
 - sequences, 808-810, 825-828, 831
 - sorting, 808-812, 821, 831
 - tuples, 815, 828, 831
- Queryable class
 - delegates, 721, 755, 793-796
 - queryable extensions, 463, 793-796, 833
- Question marks (?)
 - command-line option, 210, 437-438, 896
 - conditional operators, 98, 166-171, 175
 - null-coalescing operator, 82, 97-98, 173-178
 - null-conditional operators, 82, 98, 171-178
 - nullable modifier, 82-83, 97, 135
- Queue<T> class, 631-634, 833-834, 853-855
- Queues
 - collections, 755, 832-834, 1069
 - finalization, 584, 588-591, 595-596

- thread synchronization, 941, 1041, 1061
- \r, 65-66, 70, 78
- escape sequence, 65-73, 160
- newlines, 65-67, 70-73, 78

R

- Race conditions
 - increment and decrement operators, 150-154, 1043-1045, 1057
 - multithreading, 940-943, 1041, 1046
 - thread synchronization, 940-942, 1041, 1046
- Range type, 93, 126-127, 134
- Range variables in query expressions, 126, 806-812, 831
- Ranges for arrays, 115-116, 120, 123-129
- Rank members, 129-130, 302, 786-788
- Ranks of arrays, 115-120, 123, 129-132
- Read() method
 - console input, 28-29, 30, 31
 - interlocks, 30, 1043-1046, 1061
- Read-only automatically implemented property
 - declaring, 326, 374-375, 506-507
 - reference-type, 347, 374-375, 506-507
- Read-only pass by reference, 331, 374-376, 506-508
- Read-only pass by reference parameters, 249-251, 374-376, 505-508
- Read-only properties
 - defining, 326, 374-375, 506-507
 - strings, 79-80, 374-375, 506-507
- Read/write non-nullable reference type
 - properties, 101, 347-349, 505-507
- Readability
 - vs. comments, 34-35, 36, 571-574
 - delegates, 36, 458-460, 696
 - digit separators, 59, 60-62, 355
 - enums, 533-534, 538-543, 1091
 - generics, 623, 676-677, 681
 - if statements, 158-163, 197, 204-205
 - importance, 17, 34-36, 375
 - indentation, 23-24, 36, 160-163

- methods, 36, 79, 291
 - parentheses, 141-142, 427, 701
 - refactoring for, 36, 227, 289-291
 - switch statements, 196-200, 205-206, 428
 - whitespace, 23-24, 36, 70-72
- ReadAllTextAsync() method, 355, 976-978, 986-988
- ReadAsync() method, 976-978, 986-988, 994-1001
- ReadKey() method, 29-30, 778-779, 845-849
- ReadLine(), 28-31, 78, 225
- ReadLine() method
 - console input, 28-30, 31, 225
 - invoking, 29-31, 78, 225
- readonly modifier, 374-375, 405, 506-507
- ReadOnlySpan<T>, 126, 856-859, 1084
- Recursion
 - infinite, 188-189, 261-263, 873
 - iterators, 261, 863-866, 873
 - methods, 218-220, 261-263, 724
 - pattern matching, 261-263, 424, 433-435
- Redimensioning arrays, 115-120, 123-124, 129-132
- Reentrant locks, 974, 1046-1048, 1060-1062
- ref parameters for properties, 251, 330-333, 896-897
- Refactoring
 - classes, 227, 291, 295
 - interface features, 227, 444-445, 463-469
 - into methods, 218-219, 227-228, 291
- ReferenceEquals() method
 - description, 493-494, 515-518, 548
 - with null, 98, 173-175, 515-518
 - objects, 493-494, 515-518, 850
- References and reference types
 - array initial values, 96, 510, 1097
 - assemblies, 44, 134, 558-560
 - covariance, 96, 673-676, 707-708
 - default values, 96, 100-101, 510
 - garbage collection, 490-492, 576-578, 1118
 - generic instantiation, 96, 677-680, 892
 - identity vs. equality, 96, 493-494, 850
 - invoking, 95-96, 249, 491-492
 - libraries, 96, 134, 557-559
 - new operator, 95-96, 511, 1097
 - non-nullable properties, 100-101, 347-350, 505
 - NuGet packages, 101, 134, 559-564
 - overview, 93-96, 134, 488
 - parameters, 96, 249-251, 680
 - vs. pointers, 93-96, 491-492, 1097
 - vs. value, 93-96, 134, 488-493
- Referent types
 - member access, 95-96, 921, 1097
 - pointers, 95-96, 491-492, 1096-1097
- Reflection
 - description, 291, 880-882, 1119
 - dynamic programming, 920-922, 926, 931
 - generics, 623, 677, 681
 - member invocation, 880-882, 921-925, 930-931
 - metadata, 881-883, 931, 1127
 - overview, 134, 880-882, 1119
- Reflection class
 - delegates, 683, 693, 707
 - metadata, 880-883, 931, 1119
 - __reftype keyword, 19, 375, 1083
 - __refvalue keyword, 19, 96, 375
- Register() method, 227-228, 753, 966-968
- Registration
 - assemblies, 43, 898, 1122-1123
 - finalization activities, 581-584, 590-591, 595-596
 - token cancellation, 963-966, 968, 1038
- RegularExpressions class, 233-234, 424-426, 831
- Relational operators, 167, 168-170, 425
- ReleaseHandle() method, 594-595, 1079-1081, 1087-1088
- Remainder operations
 - binary operator, 138-141, 149, 183-185
 - compound assignment, 139-142, 149, 183

Remove() method
 delegates, 735-736, 743, 751-753
 dictionary elements, 832-834, 839, 845-849
 lists, 624, 835-839, 846-848
 strings, 80-81, 514, 839

RemoveAt() method, 736, 839, 846-848

Replace() method, 81, 224, 260

Representation errors for floating-point types
 , 53-58, 145-148, 392

ReRegisterFinalize() method, 581-584,
 590-591, 595-596

Reserved keywords, 15-19, 811-813, 877

Reset events for thread synchronization,
 1064, 1066-1068, 1076

Reset() method, 324, 761-763, 1064-1067

Resize() method, 227, 1100, 1118

Resolution of methods, 218-220, 291, 418

Results, 6, 253, 933

Resurrecting objects, 576-578, 596, 920

Rethrowing exceptions, 612-614, 618, 622

Return attributes, 881, 895-901, 931-932

Return by reference, 250-251, 254-257,
 491-492

Return by reference parameters, 224, 228,
 249-256

return statement, 229-231, 428, 702

Return types, 134, 229-231, 990-992

Return values
 async, 990-994, 1002-1006
 asynchronous void methods, 990-994,
 1002-1006
 declaring, 228-231, 253-254, 291
 Main(), 21-22, 243-245, 248
 methods, 220, 224, 228-231

Reverse() method
 arrays, 121-124, 128-132
 collections, 624, 761, 832-834
 strings, 80, 122, 130-132

Right outer joins, 780-784, 789, 809

Right-associative operators, 138-142, 149,
 183-184

Root references in garbage collection,
 576-578, 595-596, 1115-1118

Round-trip formatting, 62, 75-77, 104

Rounding floating-point types, 53-58,
 145-146, 147-148

Run() method
 asynchronous tasks, 947, 975, 1003-1005
 preference for, 475, 479-480, 969

RunContinuationsAsynchronously task
 continuation option, 951-953, 957,
 969-971

Running source code, 3-4, 10-12, 562

RunProcessAsync() method, 947,
 1003-1005, 1009-1010

Runtime
 CLI, 4-7, 39, 1106-1109
 defined, 38-39, 1106-1108, 1120
 description, 38-39, 1106-1108, 1119-1120
 purpose, 38-39, 1107, 1119-1120

Runtime callable wrappers (RCWs), 39,
 1086, 1119-1120

Runtime.InteropServices.COMException
 type, 601-604, 609-610, 1084-1085

RuntimeBinderException type, 617-618,
 922-923, 930

S

SafeHandle class, 960, 1087-1088,
 1093-1095

sbyte type, 53, 56, 272

Schedulers for tasks, 970, 973-975,
 1011-1013

Scope
 captured outer variables, 164-165, 362,
 710-715
 code blocks, 161-165, 246, 702
 methods, 164, 218, 291

SDK (software development kit), 1-4, 7,
 1110-1114

sealed access modifier
 base class overriding, 397-398, 406, 566
 interface refactoring, 315-316, 445-446, 476

- sealed classes, 397, 406, 566-567
- Sealed classes, 394, 397, 406
- Searching
 - dictionaries, 832-836, 843-848
 - lists, 833, 843, 1033
- Security
 - buffer overflows, 86, 1094-1095, 1099-1101
 - code access, 314-316, 330, 1095
 - exposing holes in, 618, 1094-1095, 1119
 - hash codes, 60, 517-521, 851-852
 - obfuscation, 41, 314-316, 394
- SEHException type, 280, 599-601, 609-610
- select clauses in query expressions, 809-813, 823-828, 831
- Select() method
 - anonymous types, 770-771, 792, 800
 - LINQ queries, 771, 792, 1033
 - outer joins, 771, 784, 788-789
 - projections, 792, 800, 815-818
- Selecting into anonymous types, 701, 770, 796-807
- SelectMany() method
 - outer joins, 771, 788-789, 792
 - query expressions, 771, 792, 809-812
- Semantic relationships, 296, 302, 781-782
- Semaphore class
 - reset events, 1057, 1062, 1064-1068
 - thread synchronization, 1046, 1061-1062, 1068
- SemaphoreSlim class, 972, 1061-1063, 1066-1068
- Semicolons (;)
 - ending statements, 13, 23, 193
 - for loops, 13, 188, 192-194
 - preprocessor directives, 13, 23, 207-210
- SequenceEquals() operator, 167-168, 515-518, 548-549
- Sequences in query expressions, 777, 825-828, 831
- Sequential invocation, 737-739, 1018, 1023
- Sequential layout, 160-161, 777, 1023-1025
- Serializable exceptions, 280, 617, 622
- SerializableAttribute, 617, 897, 900
- SerializationInfo type, 617, 655, 883-885
- set keyword for properties, 309, 326, 330-333
- Set() method for thread synchronization, 1046, 1051-1053, 1061
- SetResult() method
 - setters, 308, 317, 338-340
 - access modifiers, 315-317, 330-331, 566
 - properties, 308, 322-324, 333
- SetValue() method, 308, 317, 489
- Shared collection states, 113, 790, 1069
- Shared Source compiler, 3, 1114, 1124
- Shift operators, 138-139, 169-170, 183-184
- short type, 50, 53, 488-491
- Short-circuiting operators
 - asynchronous methods, 989-993, 1008, 1012
 - conditional, 166, 169-172, 178
 - logical, 167-171, 184-185, 552
 - null-coalescing, 98, 173-180, 286
 - null-conditional expressions, 98-99, 173-180
- SignalAndWait() method, 1003-1005, 1049, 1063-1068
- Signatures
 - constructors, 444, 664, 1057
 - deconstructors, 341, 358, 512
 - interfaces, 443-445, 458, 464-465
 - methods, 444, 664, 1057
- Signed numbers, 139, 182, 1057
- Significant digits in floating-point types, 53, 54-59, 145-148
- Silverlight compiler, 3-4, 44, 1114
- Simultaneous multithreading, 934-943, 973, 1041

- Single inheritance, 297, 385-386, 396
- Single quotes (')
 - characters, 64-68, 71-73
 - escape sequence, 65-73, 428
- Single-line comments, 34-36, 70, 571-574
- Single-threaded programs, 934-937, 940-941, 973
- Size of arrays, 115-120, 123-125, 129-130
- Sleep() method, 972-974, 1005, 1062
- Software development kit (SDK), 1-4, 7, 1110-1114
- Sort() method
 - arrays, 685-687, 696-698, 839
 - collections, 685-686, 833-841
 - lists, 696-698, 821, 839-841
- Sorted collections, 113, 807, 832-837
- SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue> class, 659, 845-849, 852-854
- SortedList<T> class, 631-633, 667, 835-842
- Sorts
 - bubble, 685-687, 698, 710-711
 - collections, 113, 807, 832-837
 - query expressions, 808-812, 821, 831
 - standard query operators, 777, 808-812, 1034
- Source code
 - compiling, 3-4, 12, 1114
 - creating, 3-4, 10-14, 557
 - debugging, 3-4, 12, 38-39
 - editing overview, 2-4, 7, 1107
 - editing with dotnet CLI, 4-5, 10-12, 1109
 - editing with Visual Studio 2019, 3-4, 7, 572
 - essential, 3-4, 12, 39
 - running, 3, 12, 38-39
- Span Slice, 126, 856, 857-859
- Span<T>, 631-634, 651, 856-859
- Special floating-point characteristics, 53-56, 92, 145-148
- Specialized types, 134, 297, 1125
- Splitting statements across lines, 13-14, 70, 247
- Square brackets ([])
 - arrays, 112, 115-116, 120
 - attributes, 37, 115-116, 897
 - indexers, 115-116, 121-122, 126-127
 - null-conditional operators, 98, 168, 173-178
- Stack class, 624-628, 631-634, 853-855
- Stack unwinding, 246, 624-628, 1100
- Stack<T> class
 - collections, 624, 631-634, 853-855
 - declaring, 624-625, 631-634, 854
 - generics, 624-627, 631-634, 679
- StackOverflowException type, 86, 620-628, 679
- Stacks
 - collections, 624, 631-634, 853-855
 - exception handling, 599-601, 605-607, 622
 - methods, 624, 631-634, 853-855
 - pointers, 95, 624-626, 1099-1101
 - rethrowing exceptions, 604-607, 618, 622
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 973, 1061
 - for undo operations, 624-628, 631-634, 853-855
 - value types, 624-628, 631-633, 679
- Stand-alone executables, 12-14, 557, 1121-1122
- Standard query operators
 - anonymous types, 701-703, 800, 803
 - collections, 755, 806-810, 831-833
 - deferred execution, 777, 796, 806-810
 - element counting, 143, 808-810, 831
 - example code, 777, 808-812, 831
 - filters, 808-812, 820, 831
 - join, 771, 808-811, 831
 - list of, 777, 808-812, 831-833
 - overview, 777, 808-812, 831-833
 - parallel queries, 771, 809, 1034-1035
 - projections, 800, 808-810, 815
 - queryable extensions, 755, 806-810, 831-833

- sorting, 777, 808-812, 821
- Start() method, 21-22, 245, 475
- StartNew() method, 245, 308, 969-971
- StartsWith() method, 178, 721, 811-812
- Statement lambdas, 697-699, 702-706, 716-718
- Statements
 - delimiters, 13, 23, 70
 - vs. methods, 225, 247, 291
 - multiple on one line, 13-14, 70, 161-162
 - splitting across lines, 23, 70-72, 160-161
 - without semicolons, 13-14, 23, 193
- States
 - collections, 113, 790, 832-837
 - iterators, 193, 863-870, 879
- STAThreadAttribute, 932, 1014, 1070-1075
- Static classes, 360-363, 367-370, 373
- Static compilation vs. dynamic programming, 367, 920-922, 926
- static keyword, 15, 359-363, 367-370
- Static members
 - associated data, 360, 363, 367
 - constructors, 363, 366-370, 373
 - fields, 359-363, 367-369, 373
 - interface refactoring, 367-369, 475, 482-484
 - methods, 363, 367-370, 373
 - overview, 360-363, 367-370, 475
 - properties, 363, 367-370, 373
 - strings, 69, 363, 373
- Stop() method, 312, 475, 1032
- Store() method, 302, 310-311, 314
- Storing
 - with files, 311, 770, 782
 - reference types, 95-96, 488-492, 1097
 - value types, 94-96, 487-490, 545
- StreamingContext type, 990-997, 1014, 1069
- StreamReader class
 - async methods, 975, 994-997, 1012
 - data retrieval, 30, 311-313, 317
- Streams, 6, 975, 994-997
- StringBuilder type, 80, 489, 1125
- Strings
 - as arrays, 112, 115-120, 130-132
 - comparing, 67-69, 143, 514
 - concatenating, 32, 67-69, 143
 - conversions, 69, 89, 143
 - description, 32, 80, 143
 - directives, 207-210, 213, 237-240
 - enum conversions, 532-534, 538-539, 1091
 - format, 32-33, 75-77, 143
 - formatting, 32-33, 75-77, 143
 - immutability, 28, 80, 507
 - vs. integers, 94-96, 488-489, 532
 - interpolation, 32, 67-71, 143
 - length, 79, 122-125, 129
 - literal values, 57, 66-69, 143
 - locks, 80, 528, 1060-1061
 - methods, 75, 80, 143
 - modifying, 28, 80-81, 143
 - newlines, 67, 70-73, 78
 - null values, 82, 98, 173-175
 - nullable modifier, 82-83, 97, 135
 - nullable reference types, 83, 96, 100-101
 - properties, 79-80, 318-320, 333
 - reversing, 121-122, 128-132, 839
 - void values, 57, 488-489, 532
- Strong references in garbage collection, 576-578, 1100, 1115-1118
- struct declarations, 115, 193, 298
- StructLayoutAttribute
 - structs, 897-898, 906-908, 1083-1084
 - vs. classes, 897-898, 905-908, 1083
 - constraints, 897-898, 906-908, 1083-1084
 - declaring, 897-900, 906-908, 1083-1084
 - generics, 897, 906-908, 1083-1084
 - initializing, 897-898, 906-908, 1083-1084
 - readonly, 374-375, 506-507, 1083-1084
 - unmanaged, 654, 897, 1083-1084
- structs, 294-295, 487, 495
- Structural equality of delegates, 691-694, 707, 716
- Structured programming, 14, 217, 441
- Subscribers
 - delegate invocation, 727, 737-739, 753
 - events, 736-737, 743, 753

- exception handling, 599-601, 622, 739-743
- hooking up, 726-727, 731, 753
- methods, 727, 730-732, 753
- Subscriptions, 725-727, 743, 753
- Subtraction
 - binary operator, 138-139, 170, 183-184
 - compound assignment, 138-142, 149, 736
 - decrement operator, 138-139, 149-153, 183
 - unary operator, 138-139, 149, 183
- Subtypes, 134, 295-297, 386
- Suffixes
 - attributes, 881, 896-900, 914
 - literal values, 53, 57-59, 143
 - numeric types, 52-53, 56-59, 88
- Sum() function, 139, 413, 417
- Super types, 53, 134, 297
- SuppressFinalize() method, 581-584, 588-591, 595-596
- Surrogate pairs, 636, 642-644, 670-672
- switch statements
 - goto in, 197-200, 205-206, 422
 - overview, 197, 200, 205-206
 - pattern matching, 200, 422-424, 441
 - working with, 197-200, 205-206, 428
- Symbols, 15-19, 53, 64-66
- Synchronization
 - lock statement, 1051-1053, 1060-1061, 1076
 - thread. See Thread synchronization
- Synchronization context with task schedulers, 973-975, 1011-1015, 1041
- Synchronized method, 1046, 1051-1057, 1061
- Synchronous delegates, 727, 946, 1059
- Syntax
 - identifiers, 15-19, 298, 811
 - iterators, 831, 863-866, 877-878
 - keywords, 15, 19, 811-813
 - Main(), 14, 20-22, 243-247
 - methods, 14-15, 20, 218-220
 - tuples, 106-108, 111, 807
 - type definitions, 293, 547, 1125
 - variables, 25-27, 106, 716
- System namespace, 50-51, 221, 567-570
- System.Action delegates, 653, 689-691, 747
- System.ApplicationException type, 280, 601-604, 612-615
- System.ArgumentNullException type, 286-289, 600-603, 612-614
- System.ArithmeticException type, 280, 600-603, 622
- System.Array class, 112-115, 124, 128-130
- System.Array.Reverse() method, 121-122, 125-132, 839
- System.ArrayTypeMismatchException type, 537, 600-603, 619
- System.Attribute class, 881, 897-907, 914
- System.AttributeUsageAttribute class, 905-908, 911, 914
- System.Boolean class, 63, 169, 554
- System.Char class, 30, 64-66, 144
- System.Collections.Generic
 - .ICollection<T> interface
 - collection initializers, 339, 754-759, 832-834
 - element counting, 760-762, 773, 832-837
 - members, 760, 832-837, 849
- System.Collections.Generic
 - .IEnumerator<T> interface
 - foreach loops, 194, 760-766, 868
 - iterators, 760-762, 863-866, 871
 - yield statement, 866-871, 875-879
- System.Collections.Generic.List<T> class, 631-634, 832-837, 844-845
- System.Collections.Generic.Stack<T> type, 624-625, 631, 633-634
- System.Collections.Generic class
 - linked lists, 624, 631-634, 833-837
 - stacks, 624, 630-634, 677-679

- System.Collections.Generic namespace, 631-634, 681, 833-837
- System.Collections.IEnumerable interface, 463, 765-766, 832-834
- System.Collections.IEnumerator interface, 760-766, 863-864, 868-870
- System.Collections.Immutable library, 507, 832-834, 1069
- System.Collections.Stack class, 624-627, 631-634, 853-855
- System.ComponentModel class, 333, 463, 1075
- System.Console
 - input methods, 29-30, 220, 225
 - newlines, 30-31, 67, 78
 - output methods, 78, 225, 240
 - round-trip formatting, 28-31, 62, 75-77
- System.Convert type, 88, 89, 538
- System.Data namespace, 45, 235, 567-568
- System.Delegate class
 - assignment operators, 694-695, 736-738, 743
 - constraints, 652, 738, 747
 - internals, 689, 694-695, 738
- System.Diagnostics class
 - debugging with, 245, 514, 564
 - notifications, 564, 737, 1010
 - nullable attributes, 101-102, 354, 912-914
 - processes, 564, 936, 1009-1010
- System.Drawing class, 45, 418, 462-463
- System.Dynamic.DynamicObject class, 418, 680-681, 920-931
- System.Dynamic
 - .IDynamicMetaObjectProvider interface, 443, 920-922, 928-931
- System.Enum class, 533-542, 885, 1091
- System.Environment class
 - command-line arguments, 243-245, 269, 886-889
 - new lines, 67, 70, 78
 - thread synchronization, 1014, 1061-1063, 1076
- System.EventArgs class, 743, 746-748, 749-752
- System.EventHandler<T> class, 737, 743-752, 1058
- System.Exception type
 - catch blocks, 280, 601, 609-610
 - description, 280, 601, 609-614
- System.FormatException type, 276, 280, 600-604
- System.Func delegates, 684, 688-691, 707
- System.GC class
 - finalization, 576-578, 583-584, 595-596
 - finalizers, 577-578, 582-584, 595-596
 - garbage collection timing, 576-578, 584, 1115-1118
 - resource cleanup, 576-578, 595, 1115-1118
- System.Index type, 112, 126-127, 857-860
- System.IndexOutOfRangeException type, 126-127, 600-603, 847
- System.IntPtr class, 1077-1080, 1081, 1087-1090
- System.InvalidCastException
 - description, 391, 537, 618-619
 - generics, 537, 630, 681
 - using, 85, 537, 619
- System.InvalidOperationException type, 600-603, 612-614, 766
- System.IO class, 78, 311-312, 587
- System.IO.DirectoryInfo
 - extension methods, 365, 371, 770
 - inner joins, 770, 782, 814
- System.IO.FileAttributes class, 770, 911, 914
- System.IO.FileInfo class
 - inner joins, 769-770, 814, 822
 - projections, 770, 814-815, 822
 - query expressions, 769-770, 814, 822

- System.IO.FileStream class, 311-312, 586-587, 597-598
- System.Lazy<T> class, 597, 598, 659
- System.Linq class, 463, 794-796, 1033-1034
- System.Linq.Async NuGet package, 560-561, 1000-1006, 1034
- System.Linq.Enumerable class, 766, 1000, 1034
- System.Linq.Extensions.Enumerable class, 463, 1000, 1034
- System.Linq.ParallelEnumerable class, 772, 1033-1034, 1035-1039
- System.Linq.Queryable class
 - delegates, 721, 793-796, 830
 - queryable extensions, 721, 793-796, 1034
- System.MulticastDelegate class
 - constraints, 695, 727, 738
 - internals, 695, 727, 738
- System.Net namespace, 44-45, 51, 235
- System.NotImplementedException type, 462, 601-604, 618
- System.NullReferenceException type, 83, 99-101, 600-603
- System.Object class
 - derivation from, 387-389, 418, 513
 - dynamic objects, 293-295, 299, 920
- System.ObsoleteAttribute, 899-900, 905-908, 914-915
- System.OutOfMemoryException type, 600-604, 612-614, 622
- System.OverflowException type, 86, 601-604, 620-621
- System.Range type, 56, 126-128, 1081
- System.Reflection class
 - delegates, 44, 695, 707-709
 - metadata, 882-883, 888-890, 931
- System.Runtime.CompilerServices
 - unmanaged exceptions, 283, 609-610, 622
 - SafeHandle, 1077-1081, 1087-1088, 1093-1094
- System.Runtime.CompilerServices
 - .CallSite<T> type, 678-679, 922, 923-925
- System.Runtime.CompilerServices
 - .CompilerGeneratedAttribute, 354, 899, 912-915
- System.Runtime.ExceptionServices class, 283, 601, 622
- System.Runtime.Serialization type, 617, 630, 883-884
- System.Security.AccessControl
 - .MutexSecurity class, 1051-1056, 1061-1063, 1076
- System.StackOverflowException type, 86, 246, 620-627
- System.STAThreadAttribute, 932, 1055, 1070-1075
- System.String type, 64-69, 80, 532
- System.Text class
 - description, 49, 78-81, 1109
 - type parameters, 49, 630-633, 892
- System.Text.RegularExpressions class, 51, 233-234, 424-426
- System.Text.StringBuilder type class, 49-50, 80-81, 462
- System.Threading class, 972-973, 1013-1014, 1075-1076
- System.Threading.CancellationToken class, 963-966, 968-969, 1038
- System.Threading.Interlocked class, 1056-1057, 1061, 1075-1076
- System.Threading.ManualResetEvent class, 1061-1063, 1064-1067, 1068
- System.Threading.Monitor class
 - locks, 1047-1049, 1053, 1061-1063
 - thread synchronization, 1049-1053, 1056, 1061-1063

- System.Threading.Mutex class, 1049-1053, 1061-1063, 1076
 - System.Threading.Tasks class, 975, 1003-1005, 1040-1042
 - System.Threading.Tasks
 - .TaskCanceledException type, 961-969, 1003-1005, 1038
 - System.Threading.Tasks.TaskScheduler class, 973-975, 1011-1013, 1074
 - System.Threading.Thread class, 936, 972-973, 1013-1014
 - System.Threading.WaitHandle class, 1003-1005, 1063-1068, 1076
 - System.Timers class, 242, 972, 1074-1076
 - System.Type class
 - generic parameters, 663, 677-678, 891-893
 - metadata, 882-885, 891-893, 901
 - type parameters, 656, 678, 891-893
 - System.ValueTuple class, 107-111, 254, 642-645
 - System.ValueType class, 96, 487-489, 494
 - System.Web class, 45, 245, 462
 - System.Windows class, 221, 245, 1075
 - System.Windows.Forms class, 45, 306, 1075
 - System.Xml namespace, 35-37, 571-574, 927-928
- T**
- Tabs escape sequence, 65, 66-73, 160
 - Task class
 - asynchronous tasks, 944-947, 975, 1074
 - thread synchronization, 1013-1014, 1041, 1076
 - timers, 242, 1065, 1074-1076
 - Task Parallel Library (TPL)
 - asynchronous complexity, 973, 977-979, 1023-1025
 - asynchronous example, 973, 977-979, 1023-1025
 - cooperative cancellation, 963-965, 973, 977-979
 - description, 973, 1023-1025, 1037-1039
 - for loop parallel iterations, 977-979, 1023-1025, 1035-1039
 - foreach loop parallel iterations, 1023, 1025, 1035-1039
 - performance, 973, 1023-1025, 1037-1039
 - purpose, 972-973, 1023-1025, 1037-1039
 - thread synchronization, 972-973, 1023-1025, 1041
 - threads pools, 944, 972-973, 1023-1026
 - Task.Factory class, 944-945, 969-970, 1011-1013
 - TaskCanceledException type, 963-969, 1028-1030, 1038
 - TaskCompletionSource<T> class, 953, 963-968, 1003-1006
 - TaskContinuationOptions enums, 540-542, 951-953, 1031
 - Tasks
 - asynchronous. See Asynchronous tasks
 - canceling, 963-969, 975, 1036
 - continuation, 950-956, 975, 1065
 - description, 935-936, 944, 975
 - disposability of, 576, 583-584, 594-596
 - exceptions, 944, 958, 975
 - long-running, 944, 971-975, 1026
 - polling, 944, 973-975, 1074
 - schedulers, 935-937, 973-975, 1011-1013
 - TaskScheduler class, 970, 973-975, 1011-1013
 - TaskScheduler property, 970, 1011-1014, 1031
 - Temporary storage pools
 - reference types, 95-96, 488-490, 491-492
 - value types, 96, 488-490, 545
 - TemporaryFileStream class, 583, 586-587, 597-598
 - Ternary operator, 98, 167-172, 175-178
 - Text class

- description, 35-36, 80-81, 257
- type parameters, 257, 657, 799
- ThenBy() method, 698, 778-779, 821
- ThenByDescending() method, 698, 777-779, 821
- this keyword
 - class members, 15, 307-309, 369
 - constructors, 15, 307-309, 344
 - extension methods, 307-309, 462, 755
 - locks, 528, 942, 1050-1055
 - nested classes, 307-309, 369, 376-378
 - static methods, 307-309, 360, 369-370
- Thread class, 935-937, 972-973, 1013
- Thread pools
 - description, 935-937, 973, 1026
 - multithreading, 934-937, 944, 973
- Thread synchronization
 - best practices, 941-942, 1041, 1061
 - COM threading model, 941, 1061, 1075-1076
 - concurrent collection classes, 1061, 1069, 1076
 - deadlocks, 941-943, 1041, 1060-1061
 - event notification, 737, 753, 1041
 - Interlocked class, 1056-1057, 1061, 1076
 - local variables, 1043-1046, 1053, 1073
 - locks, 941-942, 1060-1061, 1076
 - monitors, 1046, 1056, 1061
 - Mutex class, 1046, 1051-1053, 1061-1063
 - need for, 941-942, 1041, 1061
 - overview, 941, 1041, 1076
 - purpose, 941, 1041, 1061
 - reset events, 1057, 1064-1068, 1076
 - semaphores, 941, 1046, 1061
 - task return, 975, 1013-1014, 1017
 - thread local storage, 1014, 1069-1070, 1073
 - timers, 941, 973, 1074-1076
 - volatile fields, 1046, 1053-1055, 1061
 - WaitHandle class, 1061-1063, 1066-1068, 1076
- Thread-safe code and operations
 - delegate invocation, 753, 946, 1057-1061
 - description, 1051, 1057, 1061
 - event notifications, 753, 1057-1058, 1061
 - increment and decrement, 154, 1051, 1057
- Threading class, 935-937, 972-973, 1013
- ThreadLocal<T> type, 598, 1069-1070, 1073
- ThreadPool type, 934-938, 944, 972-973
- Threads
 - description, 935-938, 941-943, 973
 - exceptions, 936-937, 964, 972-973
 - local storage, 942, 1069-1070, 1073
 - multithreading. See Multithreading
 - pools, 934-937, 973, 1025-1026
 - synchronization. See Thread synchronization
- ThreadStaticAttribute, 914-916, 932, 1070-1073
- throw expressions, 682, 716-719, 723-725
- throw statements, 205-206, 284-285, 428
- Throw() method, 284, 607-608, 916
- ThrowIfCancellationRequested() method, 963-969, 1030, 1038
- Throwing exceptions
 - in catch blocks, 284, 601, 605-610
 - error reporting, 274, 283-284, 622
 - error trapping, 274, 601, 612-614
 - stack information in, 607-609, 618, 622
- Tildes (~)
 - complement operator, 138-139, 167-170, 187
 - finalizers, 341, 581-584, 596
 - list searches, 815, 820-822, 843
 - overriding, 59, 65-67, 241
- Time slices, 126, 815, 933-941
- Timers class, 242, 1068, 1074-1076
- Timers for thread synchronization, 941, 1061, 1073-1076
- ToArray() method, 112, 128-130, 774-776
- ToAsyncEnumerable() method, 994-1001, 1004-1006, 1034
- ToCharArray() method, 30, 64-66, 130-132
- ToDictionary() method, 774-776, 800, 845-849

- ToEnumerable() method, 766, 774-776, 868-871
- ToList() method, 770, 774-776, 868
- ToLookup() method, 538, 774-778, 800
- ToLower() method, 17-18, 80-81, 538
- Torn reads, 672, 941, 1041
- ToString() method
 - conversions, 89, 532, 538
 - description, 89, 513-514, 532
 - enum, 532-533, 538-539, 543
 - FlagsAttribute, 543, 906-908, 910-911
 - overriding, 408, 513-514, 532
- Total ordering collections, 113, 754-756, 832-834
- ToUpper() method, 17-18, 80-81, 698
- TPL, 944, 973, 1023-1025
- TRACE preprocessor identifier, 19, 207-214, 354
- Trace() method, 417, 514, 577
- Trapping errors, 114, 274-275, 604-605
- Trim() method, 227-228, 288, 325
- TrimEnd() method, 122, 325, 514
- TrimStart() method, 29-32, 288, 325
- TrimToSize() method
 - lists, 129, 770, 835-839
 - queues, 538, 1023, 1118
- true operator, 63, 166-171, 554
- True/false evaluations, 63, 147, 166-171
- Try blocks, 162-164, 275, 605
- TryParse() method
 - attributes, 90-91, 539, 888-890
 - conversions, 89-91, 290, 538-539, 888-890
 - dynamic invocation, 90-91, 538-539, 888-890
 - enum, 90-91, 538-539, 888-890
- Tuples
 - declaring and assigning, 106-108, 111-112, 359
 - generics, 111, 642-645, 803
 - GetHashCode() and Equals() overriding, 515-520, 850-852
 - groups, 106-108, 644, 807
 - pattern matching, 106-108, 433-435, 438
 - projections, 770, 800, 815
 - query expressions, 106-108, 796, 814-815
 - return values, 111, 254, 644
 - System.ValueTuple type, 107-111, 643-645, 803
 - anonymous type replacement, 111, 803, 807
 - generics, 111, 642-645, 803
- Two's complement notation, 138-139, 182, 183-187
- Two-dimensional arrays, 115-120, 123-124, 130-132
- Type checking, 419-421, 651, 1119
- Type class
 - generic parameters, 635, 663-664, 891-893
 - metadata, 655, 882-885, 1125-1127
 - type parameters, 655-656, 678, 892
- Type parameters
 - cascading, 635, 642-646, 656
 - constraints. See Constraints
 - contravariance, 651, 660, 672-675
 - covariance, 664, 669, 672-675
 - generics, 635, 663-664, 892
 - lists, 631-635, 642, 664
 - multiple, 635, 642-645, 663-664
 - names, 228, 635, 664
 - null modifier, 82-83, 97, 654-656
 - obtaining, 646, 664-666, 891-892
 - type of, 635, 663-666, 891-893
- Type safety
 - anonymous types, 703, 797-805
 - CLI, 1109, 1119-1121, 1125
 - generics, 638, 664, 681
 - managed execution, 922, 1093-1095, 1120
- typeof() method
 - attributes, 885, 896-898, 901-903
 - locks, 528, 885, 1053-1057
 - reflection, 883-885, 888-890, 1119
- Types
 - anonymous. See Anonymous types
 - arrays. See Arrays
 - Boolean, 63, 166, 169-170
 - character, 64-66, 134, 144
 - conversion overview, 84, 88-89, 523
 - CTS, 134, 1125, 1126

- decimal, 54-60, 145
 - declarations, 547, 885, 1125
 - default, 52-53, 269, 640
 - definitions, 93, 134, 1125
 - delegates, 690, 693-694, 726-728
 - description, 93, 134, 1125
 - dynamic, 664, 920-922, 926
 - exceptions, 280, 599-601, 605
 - floating-point types, 53-56, 145-148
 - generics, 623, 631-635, 677
 - hardcoding values, 57, 94-96, 373
 - hexadecimal notation, 60-61, 64-66, 144
 - implicitly typed local variables, 249, 488, 798-799
 - integers, 56-57, 96, 144
 - lambda expressions, 697-699, 702-703, 716-720
 - local variables, 25-27, 164-165, 714
 - methods, 134, 295-297, 664
 - nested, 221, 570, 643-646
 - null allowed, 82-83, 173, 628
 - null checks, 82, 98-100, 173-175
 - nullable reference, 83, 96-97, 100-102
 - nullable values, 96-97, 505, 629
 - overview, 93, 134, 832-837
 - parameters, 635, 664, 891-893
 - parsing, 88-91, 433, 888-890
 - pattern matching, 423-424, 433-438, 635
 - reference, 93-96, 134, 491-492
 - retrieving, 134, 800, 883-885
 - return values, 84, 229-231, 254
 - strings. *See* Strings
 - tuples, 106-108, 111, 642-644
 - Unicode standard, 64-65, 66, 144
 - unmanaged, 654, 1078-1083, 1093
 - from unmanaged structs, 654, 1078-1084, 1097
 - value. *See* Values and value types
 - verifying, 421, 651, 1119
 - well-formed. *See* Well-formed types
- U**
- uint type, 56, 96, 1081
 - ulong type, 53, 95-96, 1097
 - Unary expression trees, 139-141, 716-720, 723-725
 - Unary operators
 - overriding, 138-143, 548, 552
 - plus and minus, 138-139, 141-143, 149-150
 - UnauthorizedAccessException type, 315-316, 618, 1119
 - Unboxing operation, 6, 523-527, 531-532
 - Unchecked conversions, 88-89, 391-392, 523
 - unchecked keyword, 15-16, 19, 701
 - Uncompress() method, 246-248, 357-358, 445
 - Underscores (_)
 - digit separators, 59, 66, 138-139
 - field names, 17-19, 59, 323
 - identifier names, 17-19, 59, 323
 - variable names, 17-19, 59, 323
 - VB line continuation character, 59, 65-70, 213
 - Undo operations
 - generics for, 623-624, 631-634, 681
 - stacks for, 624-626, 631-634, 1100
 - Unhandled exceptions
 - description, 604, 618, 962
 - parallel loops, 962-964, 1028-1030, 1035
 - reporting, 274, 604, 962
 - tasks, 604, 622, 958-962
 - threads, 622, 958-959, 962-964
 - UnhandledException type, 604, 610-614, 958-962
 - Unicode standard
 - character representation, 64-65, 66, 144
 - escape sequence, 64-69, 143-144
 - localized applications, 64-66, 1113, 1120
 - Union() operator, 139-143, 169, 788
 - Unity .NET frameworks, 44-47, 1109-1113, 1128
 - Unmanaged code and types
 - buffer overflows, 1080, 1093-1095, 1120
 - calls into, 1077-1080, 1083, 1120
 - constraints, 652-655, 1083, 1120
 - description, 1077-1080, 1083, 1120
 - exceptions, 609-610, 622, 1120

- guidelines, 39, 1077-1078, 1120
 - parameters, 1077-1080, 1093, 1120
 - performance, 39, 1077-1080, 1120
 - pointers, 1080, 1090-1093, 1097-1099
 - resource cleanup, 594-595, 1087, 1118-1120
 - stack allocation, 1077-1080, 1093, 1100
 - structs, 1078-1080, 1083, 1093-1097
 - UnobservedTaskException type, 958-961, 964, 969
 - Unreachable end points in methods, 230, 246, 462
 - Unsafe code
 - delegates, 684, 693, 1090-1095
 - platform interoperability. See Platform interoperability
 - pointers, 1077, 1092-1101, 1104
 - unsafe modifier, 330, 1055-1057, 1093-1095
 - Unwrap() method, 531, 980-982, 989
 - UserName class, 298-299, 568, 895
 - ushort type, 53, 64, 654
 - using directive
 - aliasing, 210, 235-241, 898
 - deterministic finalization, 581-584, 587-590, 596
 - namespaces, 222, 235-240, 568-570
 - nested, 207, 234, 237-239
 - strings, 207-209, 213, 235-240
 - using statement, 193, 239, 428
 - using static directive
 - strings, 237-241, 360, 373
 - working with, 237-241, 360, 369-370
- V**
- Validation, 324-325, 393, 478
 - value keyword for properties, 309, 318-320, 333
 - Values and value types
 - boxing, 523-524, 530-532, 545
 - CTS, 92-93, 134, 1125
 - description, 93, 134, 494
 - enums. See enum values
 - generic instantiation, 494, 630, 677-679
 - hardcoding, 57, 94-96, 487-489
 - immutable, 96, 488-489, 505-507
 - inheritance and interfaces, 482, 487, 636
 - from iterators, 488, 545, 863-868
 - lock statement, 96, 487-489, 528
 - new operator, 494, 511, 548
 - overview, 93, 134, 487-489
 - parameters, 134, 487-489, 494
 - vs. reference, 93-96, 134, 488-493
 - structs, 487-488, 544-545, 1097
 - variables, 94-96, 134, 488-489
 - Values property for sorted collections, 835-837, 845-849, 852
 - ValueTask<T> class, 659, 949, 990-994
 - ValueTuple class, 107-111, 359, 644
 - ValueType class
 - var keyword, 102-103, 487-489, 799
 - pattern matching, 433-434, 532, 545
 - type declarations, 487, 533, 545-547
 - Variable parameters, 102-103, 260, 269
 - Variables
 - anonymous types, 707, 797-805
 - copying, 488-489, 492, 530
 - declaring, 25-27, 102-103, 193
 - description, 25-27, 116, 193
 - for loops, 150, 188-195, 715
 - foreach loops, 192-195, 715, 863-864
 - immutable, 373-375, 488, 505-507
 - implicitly typed local, 249, 488, 798-799
 - instance fields, 302-306, 360, 363
 - lambda expressions, 697-699, 702-706, 716-720
 - parameters, 224, 228, 248
 - query expressions, 716-718, 808-812, 831
 - reference types, 93-96, 488, 491-492
 - scope, 164-165, 362, 716
 - thread synchronization, 941-942, 1046, 1061
 - tuples, 104-108, 111, 644
 - value types, 93-96, 488-489, 545
 - working with, 25-27, 94, 302
 - Variadic generic types, 638, 642-645, 664
 - Variance, 102-103, 673-676, 708
 - Variants, 297, 488, 708
 - Verbatim strings

- interpolation, 32, 67, 70-74
 - working with, 66-73, 143
 - Versioning
 - C# 8.0 and later, 101, 476, 483
 - encapsulation and polymorphism with
 - protected interface members, 443-446, 475-476, 484
 - .NET frameworks, 44-47, 561, 1110-1113
 - overview, 113, 488, 1118
 - pre C# 8.0, 101, 462-467, 476
 - refactoring features, 227, 255-257, 488
 - Vertical bars (|)
 - bitwise operators, 168-170, 183, 184-187
 - compound assignment, 140-141, 149, 169-170
 - logical operators, 138, 167-170, 184-185
 - overriding, 65-66, 169-170, 216
 - Vertical tabs escape sequence, 65, 66-72, 160
 - Virtual abstract members, 401, 410-414, 475
 - Virtual Execution System (VES)
 - CLI, 38, 1106, 1108
 - description, 38, 1106-1108, 1125
 - managed execution, 38-39, 1106-1108, 1116
 - runtime, 38-39, 1106-1108, 1116
 - Virtual functions in C++, 401, 443, 1078-1080
 - Virtual methods
 - overridden, 398-401, 413, 455
 - overriding, 398-401, 475, 661
 - virtual modifier
 - base class overriding, 401-403, 406-408, 661
 - interface refactoring, 401, 443-446, 455
 - VirtualAllocEx() method, 1080, 1081-1082, 1086-1088
 - VirtualMemoryManager class, 1078-1081, 1087-1088, 1118
 - Visual Basic language vs
 - global methods, 228, 233, 237
 - global variables and functions, 2, 94, 233
 - Imports directive, 50, 234-241
 - line-based statements, 13-14, 217-219, 225
 - Me keyword, 14-15, 63, 319
 - named arguments, 224, 228, 269-270
 - redimensioning arrays, 112, 115-118, 130-132
 - variable declarations, 25-27, 94, 799
 - void type, 84, 94-96, 134
 - Visual code editors, 3-4, 7, 572
 - Visual Studio 2019
 - CLI, 4-7, 560-561, 1109
 - code building and executing, 2-4, 7, 10-12
 - debugging with, 4, 7, 1095
 - NuGet references, 4, 44, 559-564
 - preprocessor directives, 207-214, 237
 - project and library references, 11, 557-564
 - working with, 2-4, 7, 1095
 - void type
 - asynchronous method returns, 84, 990-993, 1002-1006
 - partial methods, 379-384, 664, 802-803
 - pointers, 84, 95-96, 1096-1099
 - return values, 84, 230, 254
 - strings, 53, 80-84, 489
 - Volatile fields, 373-375, 488-490, 1055
 - volatile modifier, 315-316, 710, 1053-1055
- ## W
- Wait() method
 - asynchronous requests, 1003-1005, 1066-1068, 1074
 - asynchronous tasks, 947, 1003-1005, 1074
 - reset events, 954-956, 1003-1005, 1064-1068
 - WaitAll() method
 - asynchronous tasks, 947, 1003-1005, 1018
 - thread synchronization, 1005, 1063-1068, 1076
 - WaitAny() method
 - asynchronous tasks, 947, 1003-1005, 1074
 - thread synchronization, 1018, 1063, 1066-1068
 - WaitForPendingFinalizers() method, 581-584, 588-591, 595-596

- WaitHandle class, 1063, 1066-1068, 1087-1088
 - WaitOne() method, 1003-1005, 1063, 1066-1068
 - Warnings
 - method overriding, 211-212, 402-403, 915
 - preprocessor directives, 207-214
 - Weak references in garbage collection, 576-577, 578, 595-596
 - Web class, 245, 557, 1113-1114
 - Well-formed types
 - assembly references, 559, 568, 1097
 - encapsulation, 394, 545-547, 1119
 - garbage collection, 576-578, 1100, 1115-1118
 - lazy initialization, 510, 598, 802-805
 - namespaces, 50-51, 221, 567-570
 - overriding object members, 401, 414, 547
 - overriding operators, 421, 545-548, 552-554
 - overview, 134, 293, 545-547
 - resource cleanup. *See* Resource cleanup
 - XML comments, 35-37, 547, 571-574
 - Where() operator, 721, 768-771, 820
 - while loops, 188-194, 203-204, 1021
 - Whitespace
 - overview, 15-17, 23, 72
 - in strings, 23, 66-73, 288
 - trimming, 23, 70-72, 288
 - Win32Exception() method, 601, 604, 1085
 - Windows class, 4, 7, 221
 - Windows Forms, 7, 45, 1075
 - Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF)
 - description, 45, 463, 1109-1114
 - high-latency example, 934, 1016, 1074-1076
 - Windows UI applications, 7, 245, 1109-1113
 - WithCancellation() method, 963-969, 1030, 1036-1038
 - Work stealing, 317, 937, 973-975
 - WPF (Windows Presentation Foundation)
 - description, 245, 463, 1109-1114
 - high-latency example, 934, 1016, 1074-1075
 - Wrapped exceptions, 280, 618, 622
 - Wrappers with API calls, 45, 1078, 1086
 - Write() method
 - console output, 28-31, 225, 723
 - invoking, 31, 225, 311-312
 - newlines, 31, 78, 225
 - strings, 31-32, 75, 514
 - Write-only properties, 326, 374-375, 506-507
 - WriteLine() method
 - console output, 31, 78, 225
 - invoking, 78, 225, 240
 - newlines, 31, 78, 225
 - round-trip formatting, 31-32, 62, 75-78
 - strings, 31-32, 78, 225
- X**
- Xamarin .NET frameworks, 44-47, 1109-1113, 1128
 - Xamarin compiler, 38-40, 44, 1114
 - XAML (Extended Application Markup Language), 35-37, 1109, 1114
 - xcopy deployment, 508-509, 557, 1123
 - XML (Extensible Markup Language)
 - binding elements, 35-37, 571-574, 928
 - comments, 35, 36, 571-574
 - delimited comments, 35, 36, 571-574
 - documentation files, 35-37, 571-574, 928
 - namespace, 35-37, 221, 571-574
 - overview, 35, 36-37, 571-574
 - reflection, 35-37, 571-573, 882
 - single-line comments, 35-36, 37, 571-574
 - XmlSerializer class, 35-37, 571-574, 617
 - XOR (exclusive OR) operators
 - bitwise, 170, 183, 184-187
 - logical, 170, 184, 185-187
- Y**
- yield statements
 - contextual keyword, 428, 811, 877-879
 - requirements, 702, 870, 877-879
 - yield break, 13, 870, 875-879

yield return, 230, 866-870, 875-879
Yielding values from iterators, 863-873,
877-879

Z

Zero-based arrays, 112, 118-127, 132

Zeros

division by, 54-55, 138-140, 148

floating-point types, 53-56, 145-148

Index of 8.0 Topics

A

- Abstract classes
 - defining, 476
 - vs. interfaces, 482
 - overview, 476
 - polymorphism, 443
- Aggregation, 476-478
- async returns, 994, 1004
- Asynchronous streams, 994, 1004
- await using statement, 587, 764

B

- Buffer overflows
 - C# vs. C++, 86
 - managed execution, 86
 - type safety, 86
 - unsafe code, 1094

C

- Constraints
 - constructor, 476
 - classes, 655
 - delegates, 476
 - generic methods, 476
 - inheritance, 443
 - interfaces, 464
 - limitations, 478
 - multiple, 478
 - nonnull, 655
 - operators, 143
 - overview, 478
 - structs, 506

- type parameters, 655
- unmanaged, 654

Constructor overloading, 476-478

D

Delegate invocation, 467, 476

I

- implementation
 - versioning, 476
- Index from end operator, 121-122
- Interfaces
 - vs. abstract classes, 482
 - vs. attributes, 482
 - collections, 463
 - constraints, 655
 - converting between implementing classes, 476
 - default members, 467
 - deriving, 458
 - diagramming, 463
 - duplicating, 476
 - extension methods, 461
 - generics, 443
 - implementation, 476
 - inheritance, 461
 - overview, 476
 - polymorphism, 443
 - purpose, 476
 - refactoring features, 467
 - value types, 482
 - versioning. See Versioning
- is operator

- pattern matching example, 441
- pattern matching overview, 441
- positional pattern matching, 441
- properties, 548
- recursive pattern matching, 441
- tuples, 815
- type, 419
- types with, 419

is { } property pattern

- .NET frameworks, 318

N

- .NET frameworks
 - description, 46
 - garbage collection, 577
 - multiple, 47
 - overview, 46
 - standard, 1113
 - versioning, 483
- Non-nullable reference type properties, 83, 101
- Non-nullable reference types, 83, 101
- Null assignment for reference types, 83, 100
- Null-coalescing assignment, 175-176
- Null-coalescing operator, 175-176
- Null-forgiving operator, 173-175
- nullable modifier
 - reference types, 83
 - strings, 83
 - type declarations, 101
 - overview, 83
 - preprocessor directives, 214
- Nullable reference types
 - default values, 101
 - nullable modifier, 83
 - introduced, 101

P

- Pattern matching
 - is operator, 441
 - with null, 431
 - polymorphism, 441
 - positional, 435

- properties, 431
- recursive, 441
- switch statements, 441
- tuples, 433
- types, 433

- Pattern matching types, 433, 441
- Positional pattern matching, 435, 441
- Property matching, 476-478

R

- Ranges, 476-478
- Read-only struct members, 506-507
- Read-only structs, 506-507
- Resource cleanup
 - description, 576
 - deterministic finalization, 584
 - exception propagating from constructors, 584
 - finalizers, 584
 - forcing, 576
 - garbage collection, 576
 - guidelines, 478
 - resurrecting objects, 576
- Reverse accessing arrays, 121, 125

S

- String interpolation, 32, 77

T

- Task-based Asynchronous Pattern, 935, 975
- Task-based Asynchronous Pattern (TAP)
 - async/await syntax, 1019
 - async return types, 1019
 - asynchronous lambdas and local functions, 1019
 - asynchronous streams, 1019
 - await operator, 1019
 - await using statement, 1019
 - complexity, 1019
 - description, 1019
 - high-latency example, 1074
 - IAsyncDisposable, 1019
 - LINQ with IEnumerable, 1019
 - overview, 1019

return types, 1019
synchronization context, 1019
synchronous issue example, 1019
task schedulers, 1019
ValueTask<T> returns, 1019

Windows UI, 1074

U

Unmanaged constraints, 654-655

Index of 9.0 Topics

F

Fit and finish features

- Target-typed new expressions, 682
- static anonymous functions, 712
- Target-typed conditional expressions, 160
- Covariant return types, 401
- Extension GetEnumerator support for foreach loops, 760
- Lambda discard parameters, 701
- Attributes on local functions, 881

I

Init only setters, 338, 340

P

Pattern matching enhancements, 433, 441

Performance and interop

- Native sized integers, 56
- Function pointers, 1090
- Suppress emitting localsinit flag, 712

R

Records, 499-500

S

- Support for code generators
 - Module initializers, 512
 - New features for partial methods, 384

T

Top-level statements, 160, 247

Index of 10.0 Topics

A

Allow const interpolated strings, 67, 70
Allow both assignment and declaration in the same deconstruction, 336, 359

C

CallerArgumentExpression attribute, 918-919

E

Enhanced #line pragma, 212-213
Extended property patterns, 424, 432

F

File-scoped namespace declaration, 568-569

G

global using directives, 236-237

I

Improved definite assignment, 27, 359
Improvements of structure types, 487, 545
Improvements on lambda expressions, 697-699
Interpolated string handlers, 32, 67

R

Record structs, 487, 499
Record types can seal ToString(), 499, 514

Index of 11.0 Topics

A

Auto-default structs, 510-511

E

Extended nameof scope, 569, 894

F

File-local types, 52-53

G

Generic attributes, 881, 897

Generic math support, 52, 56

I

Improved method group conversion to delegate, 684, 693

L

List patterns, 424, 436

N

Newlines in string interpolation expressions, 67, 70

Numeric IntPtr, 56, 1081

P

Pattern match Span<char> on a constant string, 69, 425

R

Raw string literals, 67, 70

ref fields and scoped ref, 375, 510

Required members, 350, 478

U

UTF-8 string literals, 67-69

Index of 12.0 Topics

A

Alias any type, 241, 651

D

Default lambda parameters, 269, 701

I

Inline arrays, 123, 1084

P

Primary constructors, 512, 639